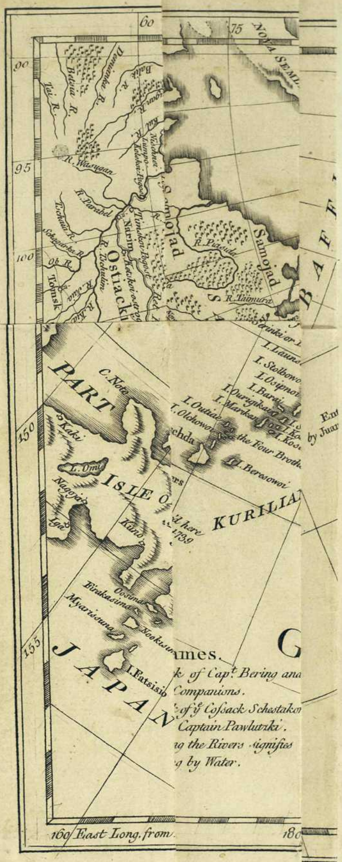
with the 4 maps
(2 on sheet)
This second ed.
has an index, not
in the first.

*The University of British Columbia Library*

*THE CHUNG COLLECTION*

#566 6/8/67 CC 253


60
75
NOVA SEMB
90
95
100
150
155
160 East Long. from
180
Tai R.
Beleia R.
Demianka R.
Balik R.
R. Wasugan
R. Parabel
Tschaia R.
Schagarka R.
Ob R.
Tomsk
R. Tschulim
R. Jaia
Ostiackı
Samojad
Samojad
R. Piasida
R. Taimura
BAFF
I. Launa
I. Stolbowo
I. Osipnow
I. Barai
I. Ourigkau
I. Markan
I. Outiae
I. Olchowoi
the Four Broth
I. Beresowoi
KURILIAN
by Juan
Ent
PART
C. Noto
Kaki
L. Omi
Nagoja
ISLE O
Iga
Kuno
1739
Oosima
Firakasima
Myarissuna
Nookusu
I. Fatsisio
JAPAN
G
ames.
k of Capt. Bering and
Companions.
of ye Cossack Schestakon
Captain Pawlutzki.
ng the Rivers signifies
g by Water.

75
70
65
60
320
315
310
260
255
235
240
245
250
JAMES ISLAND
BAFFINS STRAITS
CUMBERLAND ISLAND
Cumberland Straits
GOOD FORTUNE ISLAND
Mistake Bay
Resolution I.
I. Chidley
C. Button
HUDSON'S STRAITS
New Sea
Very doubtfull
RADOR
BAY
Charles C.
NEW ALBION
Discover'd by St. Francis Drake in 1578.
Entrance discover'd by Martin d'Aguilar in 1603
C. Blanco de St. Sebastion
C. Mendocin
Sierras Nevadas in 1542.
Port St. Francis Drake
Wrongly named Port St. Francisco
PART OF CALIFORNIA
C. Fortune in 1592
C. dito Nevadas or Snowy Cape
Pta. de los Reyes
los Farallones or Is. of St. James
Pro. de Anno nuevo
St. Pedro
Pta. de Pinos
C. Conception
Farallon de Lobos
I. St. Bernardo
I. Sta. Catalina
I. Sta. Maria
Scales
Sea Leagues 20 to a Degree.
10 20 40 60 80 100 120 140 160
British Statute Miles 69½ to a Degree.
50 100 200 300 400 500 600

# VOYAGES

FROM

# ASIA to AMERICA,

For Completing the DISCOVERIES of the

# North Weſt Coaſt of AMERICA.

To which is prefixed,

## A SUMMARY of the VOYAGES

Made by the *RU SIANS* on the

# FROZEN SEA,

## In SEARCH of a NORTH EAST Paſſage.

*Serving as an Explanation of a Map of the* Ruſſian *Diſcoveries, publiſhed by the Academy of Sciences at* Peterſburgh.

Tranſlated from the *High Dutch* of
S. MULLER, of the Royal Academy of *Peterſburgh.*

WITH THE ADDITION OF THREE NEW MAPS;

1. A Copy of Part of the *Japaneſe* Map of the World.
2. A Copy of *De Liſle*'s and *Buache*'s fictitious Map. And
3. A large Map of *Canada*, extending to the *Pacific Ocean, containing the New Diſcoveries made by the* RUSSIANS *and* FRENCH.

---

By THOMAS JEFFERYS, Geographer to his Majeſty.

---

The SECOND EDITION.

---

*LONDON:*
Printed for T. JEFFERYS, the Corner of *St. Martin's Lane, Charing Croſs.*
M DCC.LXIV.

C 1764
1st ed. 1761

THE

# EDITOR's PREFACE.

TO aſcertain the following Particulars hath been long Matter of eager Enquiry, as well among the curious as the commercial Part of Mankind, whether there is a Poſſibility of reaching the *Eaſt-Indies* by a ſhorter Way than that of doubling the *Cape of Good Hope*; and whether the two great Continents of *Aſia* and *America* do actually any where join or not. In regard to the firſt Article, there are at preſent only two Maritime Tracts known, by which we have a Communication with the *Eaſt-Indian* Part of the Globe; the firſt, round the Southernmoſt Promontory of *Africa*, to the Eaſtward; the ſecond, that ſtill more Southernly one of *America*, called *Cape Horn*, to the Weſtward. The former of theſe, is the only one uſed by the ſeveral Nations of *Europe*, whoſe Commerce invites them to the *Indian Seas*, as being by much the ſhorter of the two, though a long and moſt tedious Voyage. Various have been the Methods thought upon to facilitate our Navigation to theſe Parts, to ſhorten the vaſt Circuit we are forced to make, and to ſave both the Time and Trouble expended in ſailing round the Continent of *Africa*. As a Remedy againſt this Inconvenience, a Scheme was propoſed to cut a Canal through the Neck of Land, that lies between the moſt Northern Extent of the *Red Sea*, and the oppoſite Part of the *Levant*, (which dividing *Aſia* from *Africa*, renders the latter a great Peninſula,) and ſo to open a Paſſage to the *Indian Sea*, from the *Mediterranean* through the Straits of *Babelmandel*; but this Scheme, though concerted, and begun to be put in Execution, more

than once, in remote Ages, was found to be impracticable, and the Projectors were obliged to desist, after having consumed Multitudes of Men in the Attempt, either deterred by the Difficulty of cutting through vast Mountains and Beds of Rocks, which lay in the Way, or by a Fear of what Consequences might ensue from a Junction of those Seas; the *Red Sea* being found, by a Level taken, to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*: The Event, therefore, of a Junction of such vast Bodies of Water, they dreaded might cause great Devastation by the over-filling of the *Mediterranean*, which in all Probability would have laid *Egypt* entirely under Water. Besides, as the *Turks* govern the Country on both Sides the *Red Sea*, they would also be Masters of the Passage, and levy what exorbitant Tax they should think proper to demand, in Opposition to all the Powers in *Europe*, though they united in fighting for this Door to the *East Indies*.

Another Project was, that of cutting a Way for sailing from *Europe* to *Asia*, through the narrowest Part of the Isthmus of *Panama*; a Neck of Land, which connects the two Continents of Northern and Southern *America* together; but the Execution of this Design must meet with insurmountable Obstacles, from a Want of Numbers sufficient to accomplish so vast an Enterprize, as well as Provisions to subsist them during their Labours, was it possible to bring thither an adequate Number of Hands; not to mention that the Unhealthiness of the Climate, and the Fatigue joined with it, would be so destructive to the People employed, that perhaps the whole Maritime Power of *Europe* would be scarcely able to furnish out Men requisite for this Purpose, and supply the continual Waste of human Lives.

These Schemes being therefore justly deemed visionary, and impracticable, Men cast about to find whether Nature had offered to them any other Method of rendering the Voyage to the *East-Indies* less tedious and irksome. Two Ways only now presented themselves to be tried, the one to the North West round *America*, the other to the North East, about the Coasts of *Europe* and *Asia*. Both have been attempted without Success hitherto, though the following Treatise makes it plain to Demonstration, that there is, in the last-mentioned Voyage, a Continuation of Sea extending to *China* and *Japan*. Indeed, if we consider the extreme Difficulties that would occur in the North-West Voyage by the Coast of *America*, that round *Europe* and the Northern Boundary of *Asia*, into the *Indian* Seas, is

the

the moſt ſeaſible; and what Hopes there are of its future Succeſs, the following Sheets will demonſtrate.

This Work is divided into two Parts. The Firſt contains an Account of the ſeveral Journies, Voyages, and Expeditions, which were made to diſcover the Eaſternmoſt Extremity of *Aſia*, and to determine whether the *Frozen Sea* was continued round from the moſt Northern Shores of *Europe*, along that of *Aſia*, as far as to *Japan*; for they knew if ſo, the laſt mentioned Continent, and that of *America*, muſt be ſeparated. By theſe Means alſo the Boundaries of the vaſt Empire of *Ruſſia*, to the North and Eaſt, were fixed, and many of the ſcattered and barbarous Nations that inhabit thoſe prodigious Tracts of Land, reduced under their Subjection. The Second Part relates the Voyages and Adventures of the Commanders and Mariners, that by the Order of the late Czar, *Peter the Great*, and the ſucceeding Empreſs, were undertaken in order to prove whether *Aſia* and *America* were any where connected; if not, how wide the Diſtance might be between them. Theſe ſeveral Voyages, like all others that are made for the Diſcovery of unknown Coaſts, were attended with great Perils and Diſtreſſes to the Navigators; but by their Aſſiſtance our Curioſity is at length ſatisfied, and we are certain of theſe two Points, from Proofs founded upon very authentic Teſtimonies, both that the Poſſibility of a North Eaſtern Paſſage to *India* does indeed exiſt, and that the abovementioned Continents are really ſeparated by Sea from each other. But as in all Probability the Diſtance between the Extremities of each is not great, the Peopling of *America*, which has ſo long puzzled the Inquiſitive, may be very fairly hence accounted for, ſince Accident might more than once have driven ſome of the Inhabitants of *Kamtchatka* in their Boats too far out to Sea, for them to recover their native Shore, and have landed them upon the oppoſite Coaſt of *America*. Neither is it impoſſible, that the intermediate Channel in this ſevere Climate, may in ſome Years be ſo entirely frozen over, at leaſt for a Time, as to have given thoſe People an Opportunity of paſſing it on Foot, whoſe Return back again a ſudden Thaw of the Ice may naturally be ſuppoſed to have prevented. The Difference of Language, Cuſtoms, Shape, and Features, that appear between the *American* Savages and the Nations abovementioned, may ariſe from various Cauſes in the Courſe of ſo long a Tract of Time as may have paſſed ſince ſuch a Chance as this firſt happened; during which the ſame, moſt likely, hath been repeated often in diſtant Ages of the World.

But

But to return; I obſerved above, that there is indiſputably, according to theſe Memoirs, a Paſſage along the Northern Coaſt of *Aſia* round the *Tchutſchi Noſs*, and ſo to the South by *Japan* into the *Indian Seas*, which is without doubt a much nearer Way, meerly in regard to Diſtance, than the preſent Tract about the *Cape of Good Hope*. Yet there is one great Obſtacle that, I am afraid, can never be ſo far overcome as to make the Voyage this Way practicable, even although the Courſe was much ſhorter than it is; I mean the vaſt Shoals of Ice, ſometimes fixed and ſometimes floating, that inceſſantly preſent themſelves in the *Frozen Ocean*, which oftentimes congeal together in ſuch a Manner as to form a new Continent, as it were, and freeze up the Ships, that are unfortunate enough to be ſurrounded by them, and detain them for ſeveral Weeks together. The Delay, occaſioned by this Circumſtance, to the *Ruſſian* Veſſels, has been ſo great, that two or three Years have elapſed in making the Voyage from the *Lena* to *Kamtchatka*; it being hardly poſſible, during the ſhort Continuance of the Summer in theſe Parts, to paſs through the broken Shoals of Ice before the Winter ſets in again. And though undoubtedly the *Britiſh* Sailors are the moſt intrepid and ſkilful on the Globe, yet, provided the Voyage, one Time with another, ſhould only take up Twelve Months from *Europe* to *India*, notwithſtanding the vaſt Addition made to it is by the Circuit from *England* round *Norway*, *Lapland*, *&c.* into the *Frozen Ocean*, ſtill this would be much more inconvenient, as well as of longer Duration, than the uſual Tract about the *Cape of Good Hope*. The Danger and Miſery that accrues, when a Stay is made of any Length of Time in ſuch Climates, and the People are not continually exerciſed with Labour, is certain and fatal from that dreadful Diſtemper the Scurvy, which is always found in ſuch Caſes to make horrible Ravages in the human Frame. Indeed it is very uncertain whether this Diſorder could be prevented by any Means whatever, while the Men are forced to ſubſiſt upon Salt Proviſions; and to ſupply them with freſh would be impoſſible; ſo that, upon the whole, ſuch a Voyage ſeems, in my Opinion, altogether unfit, and impoſſible to be executed with any tolerable Degree of Succeſs that can be depended upon.

It has been aſſerted, that the Ocean under the Northern Pole is open, and but little incumbered with Ice, and that therefore the Performance of the Voyage we are treating of, ſeems probable to be effected this Way; one would be loth to diſcourage any Endeavour to promote the public Benefit, but yet it ſhould be conſidered, that was the

the Certainty of this Fact proved by repeated Teſtimonies, which is far from being the Caſe, even then the great Obſtruction, both in entering and leaving the Polar Ocean, would ſtill make the Voyage exceedingly hazardous, tedious, and uncertain. I have thought proper to make theſe few Animadverſions upon the North-eaſtern Navigations, and ſhall now proceed to ſay ſomething relating to the Work in general.

The Reader will here find, in their Order, the ſeveral Expeditions undertaken by the *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks* to make themſelves acquainted with ſome of the barbarous Nations that inhabit the vaſt Tract of *Northern Aſia*, in order to extend the Limits of the *Muſcovitiſh* Territories, and levy a Tribute from the Inhabitants of the only Riches thoſe Countries are as yet productive of, which are indeed the moſt properly ſuited to them, the warm and beautiful Furs wherewith Nature has cloathed many of the Animals that are bred there. In the Courſe of theſe Narrations, a Number of curious and ſtrange Particulars occur, which ariſe ſometimes from the uncouth Cuſtoms, as they appear to us, of the rude Poſſeſſors; at others, from a Soil and Climate ſo different from our own, that it is only from the *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks* we can expect any authentic Information in what appertains to theſe diſtant Regions, becauſe they are not only better fitted to travel therein, and nearer of a Complexion in Temper and Diſpoſition with the wild Nations that people them, but their Intereſt alſo, and the Gain they expect to make by Diſcoveries of this Sort, prompts them thus to exert themſelves.

The Reader will find the Stile of this Recital to be very unaffected and ſimple, being only a plain Tranſlation of Memoirs of Voyages collected from the Original Manuſcripts, containing the Diſcoveries made, Step by Step, along the Coaſts of the *Frozen Sea*, and to the Continent of *America*, from the Year 1636 to that of 1742. In regard to the Maps, which are inſerted for the better Explanation of the Matters related in the Work, the original Map of the *Ruſſian* Diſcoveries, comprehending the Coaſt of *Aſia*, from *Nova Zembla* round the *Tchutkſchi* to the Iſle of *Japan*, with the Courſe of the *Ruſſia* Ships which actually ſailed from the River *Lena* round the *Tchutſkoi Noſs* to *Kamtchatka*, and alſo the Tracts of Captain *Bering* and *Tchirokow*, from the Port of *Awatſcha*, in *Kamtchatka*, likewiſe to the oppoſite Coaſts of *North America*; I have likewiſe inſerted on it the Routs of the ſeveral Travellers by Land and Sea, which are not in the Original; and added three other Maps.

The

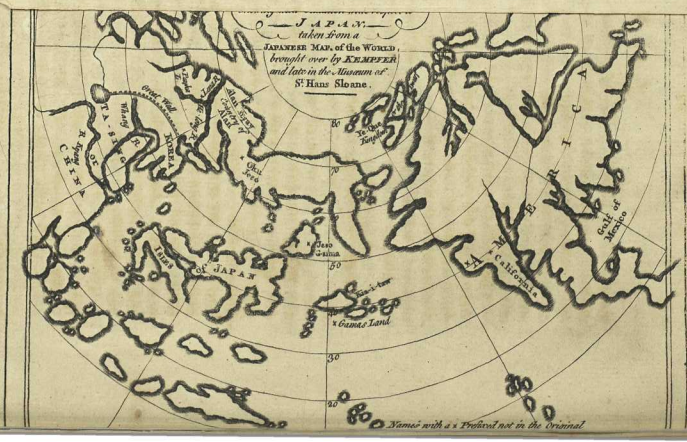
The *Firſt* is a Copy of Part of a *Japaneſe* Map of the World, formerly belonging to Sir *Hans Sloane*'s Collection, now in the *Britiſh Muſeum*, of the ſame Parts of the Globe, which agree, in moſt eſſential Particulars, with the *Ruſſian* Accounts here given.

The *Second* is a Map copied according to the Forgeries and pretended Diſcoveries collected by Meſſrs *De Liſle* and *Buache*.

The *Third* is a Map of *Canada* in *North America*, extending from Captain *Bering*'s Diſcoveries in about 59 Degrees of North Latitude to 40 Southward, and thence in a Parallel as far as *Newfoundland*, laid down according to the moſt accurate Obſervations, by which may be perceived the great Extent the *French* gave to *Canada*, even into the very remote Parts of this vaſt Continent. What End they could purpoſe to themſelves by publiſhing ſuch Falſities, in regard to the Form and Situation of Part of the Globe, is not eaſy to determine, unleſs by a Pretence of having firſt diſcovered the whole, they intended to lay Claim to all the Eaſtern, as well as to drive out and exclude us from all the Weſtern Shores of the Northern Parts of the *New World*; if ſo, we have now the Pleaſure to ſee their Artifices have met a proper Retaliation from an injured Nation, and, inſtead of gaining by their Encroachments upon others, they have loſt all their valuable Settlements, and are themſelves drove out from *North America*, which we have ſo gallantly and juſtly purchaſed by our Swords.

VOYAGES

the Frozen Sea, beyond *Nova Zembla*, that deſerves credit. The *Dutch* diſcoveries in 1643, merely regard the iſlands ſituated North Eaſt of *Japan*.


JAPAN
taken from a
JAPANESE MAP, of the WORLD,
brought over by KEMPFER
and late in the Museum of
Sr Hans Sloane.
Names with a x Prefixed not in the Original

# A SUMMARY of

# VOYAGES

Made by the *RUSSIANS* on the

# *FROZEN SEA,*

In SEARCH of a

# NORTH-EAST PASSAGE.

GEOGRAPHERS have ever been extremely desirous to have it certainly determined, whether *Asia* and *America* formed one *continued* Continent towards the North Eastward; but the situation of most of the *European* nations, being so remote from those regions, rendered it both very difficult and dangerous, if not intirely impracticable, for them to ascertain that point, as the navigation, in such attempts, must have been made, either through the Frozen Sea, or the Southern Ocean; and upon this latter, either round about from the *East Indies*, or by the way of *America*.

We have nothing from the Voyages of the *English* and *Dutch* on the Frozen Sea, beyond *Nova Zembla*, that deserves credit. The *Dutch* discoveries in 1643, merely regard the islands situated North East of *Japan*.

The landing of Sir *Francis Drake* on the *American* coaſt, in the year 1579, when he gave the name of *New Albion* to a tract of land North of *California*, and the Voyage of *Martin d'Aguilar*, in the year 1603, which was only a little farther to the North Weſt, are the only attempts on the *American* ſide, of which we have any certain Accounts. As to *John de Fuca*'s pretended voyage, in the year 1592, there are well-grounded Reaſons to agree with thoſe, who think it fictitious; and we may ſurely look in the ſame light upon the voyage of the *Spaniſh* Admiral *De Fonte*, in the year 1640, till the objections that have been raiſed againſt it are anſwered.

The honour of doing ſomething more, was reſerved for the *Ruſſian* Empire, which was much better ſituated for that purpoſe, as it lay more contiguous to thoſe parts. The renowned Emperor *Peter the Great*, during his reſidence in *Holland* in 1717, was requeſted, not only to encourage but promote ſo uſeful an attempt, by ſome who, incited either by intereſt or curioſity, had this affair moſt at heart; he accordingly, ſome time after, with his own hand drew up particular orders on that head, which he delivered to his Chief Admiral, Count *Fedor Apraxin*.

The imperial court of *Peterſburg*, and the greateſt part even of thoſe in *Siberia*, were at that time entirely unacquainted with the progreſs which had been made in thoſe diſcoveries above ſeventy years before, by voyages of the natives of *Jakutzk* *, to the North Eaſtward of

* *Jakutzki*, are a Pagan people, called ſo by the *Ruſſians*; they are under the *Ruſſian* government, and live along the river *Lena*, and about the city of *Jakutſki*; but they call themſelves in their own tongue, *Zinzacha*, or *Zinzogotock*. This is one of the moſt numerous Pagan nations in *Siberia*, and conſiſts of the following tribes. 1. *Boro-Ganiſka*. 2. *Baitungſki*. 3. *Bady's*. 4. *Jock-Soyon*. 5. *Menga*. 6. *Kangalas*. 7. *Namin*. 8. *Bathruſki*. 9. *Lugoi*. 10. *Bolugur*. All which together make about 30,000 men, who pay ſcot and lot. They call themſelves *Zacha*, from the name of one of their antient Princes. But the name of that Prince who headed them, at the time when they ſeperated from the *Bratti*, who live near the *Baikallain Lake*, with whom they were formerly united as one nation, was *Deptzi Tarchentegin*. They do not worſhid *Bullwans*, or Idols carved in wood, like the *Oſtiaks* and *Tunguſi*; but they offer ſacrifices to an inviſible God in heaven; yet they have a type or image of that deity ſtuffed out, with a monſtrous head, eyes of corral, and a body like a bag; this image they hang upon a tree, and round it the furs of ſables and other animals. Each tribe has one of theſe images. Their Prieſts whom they call *Bihun*, make uſe of Drums, like the *Laplanders*; they worſhip the INVISIBLE GOD, under three different denominations, *Arteoyon*, *Schugotoygon*, and *Tangara*, which three names are callen by them *Sumans*, (i. e. *Sacred*.) What *Iſbrand Ides* (in his travels, p. 132.) relates concerning theſe people, is all true, excepting the cuſtom of burying alive, or killing the oldeſt ſervants, or favourites of a Prince, at his funeral, which is aboliſh'd; but they ſtill own, that formerly, before the *Ruſſians* were among them, they were uſed to

of that province. The North Eaſterly Iſthmus of *Siberia*, commonly called *Tſchukotzkoi Noſs*, had been ſailed round long before the *Ruſſians* to do ſo. They have beſides many ſuperſtitious cuſtoms, in common with other nations, which they celebrate about certain trees, that they look upon to be ſacred: When they meet with a fine tree, they preſently hang all manner of nick-nacks about it, as iron, braſs, copper, *&c.* Their Prieſts, or *Bihuns*, when they perform their ſuperſtitious rites, put on a garment trimm'd with bits of iron, rattles, and bells. As ſoon as the fields begin to be green, each generation gathers together, at a place where there is a fine tree, and a pleaſant ſpot of ground. There they ſacrifice horſes and oxen (as a new year's offering, their new year beginning in *April*,) the heads of which they ſtick up round the trees, and on the heads of the former they leave the ſkin. They then take a certain liquor, which they call *Cumiſes*, ſit down in a circle, and after having lifted up the jugg, with both hands, they drink to one another: Then they dip a bruſh in the *Cumiſes* and ſprinkle ſome in the air, and ſome into the fire, which they light up on that occaſion. On this Feſtival they get wretchedly drunk, and gorge themſelves to that degree with meat, that it is ſaid four perſons will commonly devour a whole horſe. Nay ſome will ſtrip themſelves ſtark naked, that nothing may confine or hinder them from extending their paunches; this they continue ſo long, till ſome breathe their laſt on the ſpot. Theſe people are very naſty; they ſeldom or hardly ever waſh themſelves; they will eat the fleſh of oxen, cows, and horſes, but no pork, be they never ſo hungry: But then they never mind whether the cattle be ſick or ſound; for they indifferently kill and eat it. If the meat has had but one boiling up, it is done enough for them, they never ſkim the pot, but look upon the ſkum to be the fatteſt and beſt part of all, and therefore diſtribute it about, as a great dainty. The veſſels in which they ſtamp their dried fiſh, roots, and berries, are made of dried oxen and cow's dung. Their cattle ſtand in the ſame room, or hut, where they themſelves dwell; the floor of their huts is terraſſed even and ſmooth. They eat bread, when they can get it, but it is no uſual part of their diet, becauſe they neither plough, ſow, nor plant. They eat but little ſalt, yet ſometimes they take ſalt in exchange for other commodities. They are fond of ſmoaking *Chineſe Schaar*, or tobacco, for which they truck with the *Ruſſians*. In *February* and *March* is their harveſt, when the ſap riſes in the trees, for then they go into the woods, cut down pine-trees, take off the inner bark or baſt, which they carry home and dry for their winter's proviſion. They then beat it to a fine powder, boil it in milk, and eat it together with dried fiſh, alſo beat to powder. They ſhift their habitations in the ſame manner as the *Tobolſkian Tartars* do. Their winter-houſes, or huts, are ſquare, made of thin planks and beams; the roofs are covered with earth, and a hole is left in the middle for the ſmoke to go out. Their ſummer-dwellings are round, and in ſhape of a ſugar-loaf; the out-ſide ſhell of theſe huts is made of the bark of birch trees, curiouſly joined together, and embroider'd with horſe-hair dyed of many colours. A hole is alſo left at the top, for the ſmoak to paſs through. They make their chimneys, or fire-places, in the middle of their huts, where they alſo fix a pot-hook to hang their pots on, which they make themſelves, as they alſo do their kettles, which have only an iron bottom, the ſides being made of the bark of birch, which they have a way of joining to that iron bottom ſo tight and cloſe, that it will not only hold water, but the flame of the fire cannot burn it. They bury their dead divers ways: The moſt eminent among them pitch upon a fine tree, and declare that they will be buried there; and when the corpſe is buried, they put ſome of the beſt moveables of the deceaſed, along with him into his grave. Some only put the corpſe upon a board, which they fix upon four poſts in the wood, cover the dead body with an ox's or horſe's hide, and ſo leave it. Some again put the body into

*ſians* had reached as far as ‡ *Kamtſchatka*, by this navigation. It was therefore already decided, that there was no connection between thoſe two parts of the world. Such a remarkable event would perhaps have been for ever concealed, if I had not, in the year 1736, had the happineſs, during my ſtay at *Jakutzk*, to find in the archives of the town ſome original writings, in which this voyage is deſcribed, with circumſtances that leave no room for doubt.

In the year 1636, they began to navigate the Frozen Sea from *Ja-*

the ground. But the greater part of them, when they die, are left in their huts, whence the relations take the moſt valuable things, make the huts up cloſe, and then leave them. Thoſe who die in the city of *Jakutſkoi*, are left lying in the ſtreets, where they are frequently devoured by dogs. Each tribe of theſe people looks upon ſome particular creature as ſacred, *e. g.* a ſwan, gooſe, raven, *&c.* and ſuch is not eaten by that tribe, though the others may eat it. As to their tongue there is ſome affinity between them and the *Crim Tartars*; and a conformity with the tongues of the *Braiti*, the *Kirgaſs*, and the *Sajantzian Tartars*; though the laſt talk pretty commonly the *Mungalian* and *Kalmuchkian* tongues, to which countries they are near neighbours. The *Jakutzki*, like other Pagans, allow of polygamy. They buy and ſell their wives, and it is cuſtomary among the *Tartars* and *Oſtiacks*, and all their neighbours; where the bridegroon is obliged to purchaſe his bride of her parents.

*Jakutzk*, is capital of this province, on the river *Lena*, diſtant above a hundred *German* miles from the Frozen-Sea. There reſides a Governor General. The ſoil about this city, notwithſtanding it lies pretty far north, produces corn. However, the inhabitants, who are more intent upon hunting ſables, foxes, and other animals, for the ſake of their furs, neglect cultivating what they call *Starri paſchni Jalahn*, (*i. e.* the land which their fore-fathers uſed to plough.) Another reaſon why they are remiſs in this point is, that they have an opportunity of being ſupplied with corn, by means of the rivers *Wittim* and *Kiringa*, the banks of which produce fine corn. But though very little corn is ſown in this country, yet that which is, whatever grain it be of, thrives apace, but the ſtraw never exceeds ſix inches in height; for as ſoon as the corn peeps out of the ground, it immediately ſhoots into ears, and ripens in ſix weeks time. The reaſon of this is, becauſe here the ſun is hardly ever below the horizon in ſummer, but affords its cheriſhing warmth, both night and day, to the ground: And what is moſt obſervable, is, that during the whole time, it does not rain, but the earth, though fat and black, yet never thaws above ſix or nine inches deep, inſomuch that the roots are plentifully ſupplied with moiſture from below, whilſt the conſtant heat of the ſun above, irradiates what is out of the ground; and this is the cauſe of ſo quick a harveſt: On the other hand, thoſe places which are ſituated more Weſtward, do not enjoy this advantage: The high icy mountains of the iſland of *Nova Zembla*, lying juſt oppoſite to them. Near this city are bred alſo very good horſes, they are pretty large, are uſed to be turned out all the winter long, and will ſcrape the ſnow with their hoofs aſide, to come at the graſs; they alſo eat the buds of birch and aſpen, and grow ſleek, plump, and fat, and look much better than they do in ſummer, when their hair grows long. Not far from this city, Weſtward, there runs a river called *Wilgui*, near the head of which there is a Vulcano. The aſhes thrown up by this mountain, are looked upon to be the *Flores Salis Armoniaci*.

‡ See the natural hiſtory of *Kamtſchatka*, tranſlated from the original, publiſhed in the *Ruſſian* language at *Peterſburg*.

*kutzk*.

*kutzk*. The Rivers *Jana*, *Indigirka*, *Alaſea*, *Kolyma*, were diſcovered one after the other. The firſt navigation from the river *Kolyma* towards the Eaſt, was made in the year 1646, by a Company of Voluntiers, who were called *Promyſchleni*. They found the ſea full of ice, yet between the ice and the continent a free navigable channel, wherein they proceeded for forty-eight hours together, when they opened a bay where they came to an anchor: The inhabitants proved to be of the nation of the *Tſchuktſchi*, with whom they dealt in this manner: The merchandize was expoſed upon the ſtrand; the *Tſchuktſchi* took what pleaſed them, and left in lieu of them ſea-horſe teeth, or things made of them. No one would venture to go aſhore to the *Tſchuktſchi*; and beſides, an interpreter was wanted, as they did not underſtand each other's language. They were content with having made this firſt diſcovery, and returned to the river *Kolyma*.

Upon their return, the intelligence relating to the teeth of the ſea-horſe, induced more of the *Promyſchleni* to undertake a ſecond voyage the following year. Theſe were joined by *Fedot Alexeew*, who thought it requiſite to deſire the Governor upon the river *Kolyma*, to ſend with him one of the *Coſſacs* that were in his ſervice, to take care of the intereſt of the Crown during the voyage: one *Semun Deſchnew* offered himſelf for this purpoſe, and received his orders from the Governor; and four ſhips that were called *Kotſches* ſailed at once, in *June* 1647, from the river *Kolyma*. The river *Anadir* was reported to be well inhabited; and it was the common opinion, that it emptied itſelf into the Frozen Ocean; conſequently, one of the views of this voyage was to diſcover its mouth: But not only this attempt, but every thing elſe that was propoſed to be done at that time, miſcarried; becauſe the ſea was that ſummer too full of ice to permit of a free navigation.

The hopes conceived were, however, not abandoned; on the contrary, the number of the favourers of this project, as well among the *Coſſacs* as *Promyſchleni*, increaſed the following year in ſuch a manner, that ſeven *Kotſches* were equipped, all with the ſame view. What became of four of theſe veſſels is unknown: on board the remaining three were *Semun Deſchnew* and *Geraſim Ankudinow*, the Chiefs of the *Coſſacs*, and *Fedot Alexeew*, the Chief among the *Promyſchleni*.

They ſet ſail on this remarkable voyage the 20th of *June* 1648. It is much to be regretted, as we have yet but little knowledge of thoſe parts, that all the circumſtances of this navigation are not particularly

ticularly mentioned. *Deſchnew*, who, in an account ſent to *Jakutzk*, relates his adventures, ſeems to ſpeak only accidentally of what happened to him by ſea. We find no event mentioned till he had reached the great iſthmus of *Tſchuktſchi*; no notice is taken of obſtructions by the ice, and probably there were none, for *Deſchnew* obſerves, upon another occaſion, that the ſea is not uſually ſo clear of ice as it was at that time. His relation begins with that great iſthmus, which indeed is a circumſtance that deſerves the moſt notice. " This iſthmus, " ſays he, is quite different from that which is found by the river " *Tſchukotſchia*, Weſt of the river *Kolyma*. It lies between the North " and North Eaſt, and turns circular towards the river *Anadir*. On " the *Ruſſian*, or Weſt ſide of it, there falls a brook into the ſea, near " which the *Tſchuktſchi* have erected a ſcaffold, like a tower, of the " bones of whales. Overagainſt the iſthmus *(it is not mentioned on " which ſide)* there are two iſlands in the ſea, upon which were ſeen " people of the *Tſchuktſchi* nation, thro' whoſe lips were run pieces " of the teeth of the ſea-horſe. One might ſail from the iſthmus to " the river *Anadir*, with a fair wind, in three days and nights, and " it might be travelled by land within the ſame time, ſince the river " *Anadir* empties itſelf into a bay." The *Kotſche* which *Ankudinow* was on board of, was wrecked on this iſthmus, but her crew were ſaved, and taken up by the other *Kotſches*. *Deſchnew* and *Fedot Alexeew* went on ſhore on the 20th of *September*, and had an engagement with the *Tſchuktſchi*, in which the latter was wounded. The two *Kotſches* loſt ſight of one another, and never after rejoined. *Deſchnew* was driven about in the ſea by the wind and waves till *October*; when he ſuffered ſhipwreck (as appears by circumſtances) pretty far to the Southward of the river *Anadir*, ſomewhere about the river *Olutora:* What became of *Fedot Alexeew* and his ſhip's company, will be mentioned hereafter.

After this diſaſter, *Deſchnew* with his ſhip's crew, which conſiſted of twenty-five men, went in ſearch of the *Anadir*; but being utterly unacquainted with the country, he wandered about for ten weeks, at the end of which time he reached the banks of that river, not far from its mouth, where he found neither inhabitants or woods; here he fixed his habitation, and ſent twelve of his men up the river, who, after twenty days fruitleſs travel, determined to return; but moſt of them periſhed on the road, being quite worn out with hunger and fatigue. The following ſummer, he, with the remainder of his company, went up the river by water, and found a people who called

called themſelves *Anauli*, with whom he had ſeveral ſkirmiſhes; but having deſtroyed great numbers of them, he in the end forced them to pay tribute: he then built a fort, which he named *Anadirſkoi-Oſtrog*, where he fixed his reſidence.

After the departure of *Deſchnew* for the river *Kolyma*, ſeveral others exerted themſelves with great vigour, in preparing and regulating new expeditions, as well by water as by land. Amongſt theſe, one made by ſea deſerves to be taken notice of; not ſo much on account of the diſcoveries made thereby, as from what occaſioned it.

*Michael Staduchin*, a *Coſſac* of *Jakutzk*, with ſome of his companions, had built, in the year 1644, the lowermoſt *Oſtrog* on the river *Kolyma*, and the year following returned to *Jakutzk*, with ſome accounts which ſeem to deſerve examination. He was told that there was a great iſland in the Frozen Sea, which extends from the river *Jana* oppoſite to *Kolyma*, and could be obſerved from the continent. The *Tſchuktſchi* inhabiting round the river *Tſchukotſchia*, which falls into the Frozen Sea to the Weſtward of *Kolyma*, uſed to go with Rein-Deer in the winter in one day's time to this iſland, there to kill ſea-horſes, the heads and teeth of which they brought back, and worſhipped. Indeed, *Staduchin* himſelf had not ſeen ſuch teeth among the people; but he had heard from the *Promyſchleni* that ſuch were found among them, and that certain rings belonging to the ſledges of their rein-deer were made of the teeth of ſea-horſes, they at the ſame time alſo confirmed the reality of ſuch an iſland, and imagined it to be a continuation of the land of *Nova Zembla*, whither they uſed to go from *Meſen*.

Upon theſe advices, *Staduchin* was on the 5th of *June*, 1647, diſpatched for the ſecond time. But he could neither diſcover nor procure any farther intelligence of the iſland in the Frozen Sea, and after ſome fruitleſs reſearches, the moſt important fruit he reap'd from this voyage was the information he brought, that the neareſt way to the *Anadir* was by land. But the advantageous intelligence of a way by land to the river *Anadir*, was originally owing to a campaign made by the *Coſſacs* from the *Kolyma* up the river *Anui*, in the beginning of the year, 1650. What was known before, conſiſted only in an uncertain report; but ſome priſoners were taken from the *Chodynzi*, who were well acquainted with the way.

Theſe informations encouraged a Company of Voluntiers, compoſed partly of *Coſſacs*, and partly of *Promyſchleni*, to deſire permiſſion from the commander of *Kolymſkoi Oſtrog*, to let them go to the river

river *Anadir*, in order to make the people tributary. They obtained leave, and immediately set out on the expedition. *Semoen Motora*, the leader of this company, on the 23d of *March*, on the upper part of the river *Anui*, took prisoner a person of distinction belonging to the *Chodynzi*, whom he carried along with him to the *Anadir*, and on the 23d of *April*, 1650, arived at the *Anadir*, where he was joined by *Deschnew*; but *Michael Staduchin*, being jealous of some of the company, quitted them, and went to the *Penschina*, since which nothing farther was ever heard of him.

*Deschnew* and *Motora* had built vessels on the *Anadir*, to put to sea with them, in order to discover more rivers, when the death of the latter happened; having in the end of the year 1651, lost his life in an engagement with the *Anaules*. In the mean while *Deschnew* sail'd in the summer 1652, to the mouth of the river *Anadir*, where he observed, that on the North side of it, a sand-bank extended itself far into the sea: On the mouth of this river, plenty of sea-horses are found: *Deschnew* got several of their teeth, and thereby thought himself sufficiently rewarded for his labour.

In the year 1653, he had wood felled to build a *Kotsche*, in which he might send the tribute he had received to *Jakutzk*: But as other materials were wanting, this affair did not go on. It was likewise said, that the sea about the great *Tychukeschi Noss*, was not every year free from ice.

A second voyage to the *Korga*, was made in the year 1654, on account of the sea-horse teeth, wherein *Juchko Seliwerstow*, a *Cossac*, lately come from *Jakutzk*, engaged, who had accompained *Michael Staduchin* in his voyage, and being sent by him to *Jakutzk*, with a proposal to have a search made after the sea-horse teeth, was now provided with an order for that purpose. In his instructions, next to *Anadir*, is also named the river *Jentschendon*, which empties itself into the bay of *Penschinsky*. On these two rivers he was to make the people tributary, because the transactions of *Deschnew* at *Jakutzk* were not yet known. This occasioned new discontents: *Seliwerstow* wanted to ascribe to himself the discovery of the *Korga*, as if this was the place where he had arrived by sea with *Staduchin* in the year 1649; but *Deschnew* proved that they had not so much as reached the great Noss of *Tchutktschy*, which consisted of nothing but rocks, and was but too well known to him, since *Ankudinow*'s Kotsche was wrecked there. "This, said he, was not the first Cape which occurred under the name of *Swatoi* Noss. The islands where the teeth

" teeth are found, ſituated oppoſite the Noſs of *Tchuktchy*, were the " proper mark thereof. The inhabitants of this place *Deſchnew* had " ſeen, but *Maducnin* and *Seliwerſtow* had not; and the *Korga* on the " mouth of the river *Anadir*, was not far from it."

*Aeſchnew* taking at the ſame time a view of the ſea-coaſt, found *Koreki* * habitations, and in them a *Jakutzk* woman, whom he knew to have belonged to *Fedot Alexeew*. He aſked her where her maſter was? She anſwered, " *Fedot* and *Geraſim* (*Ankudinow*) had died of " the ſcurvy; others of their company had been ſlain, and ſome few " had made their eſcape in ſmall veſſels; but ſhe was intirely ignorant " towards what place they had ſhaped their courſe, or what had be- " come of them."

Some veſtiges of theſe latter were diſcovered afterwards on the river *Kamtſchatka*; it is however certain, that the *Kamtſchedales* had ſome knowledge of the *Ruſſians* before the year 1697, when *Wolodimer Atlaſſow* laid the foundation of the conqueſt of that country; for a com-

* *Korjaki*, or *Koreki*, are a Pagan nation, living on the Weſt and North Side of the country of *Kamtſchatka*. They are beardleſs, like the *Laplanders*, *Samojeds*, and *Oſtiacks*; for, in the firſt place, they have naturally very little hair about the mouth, and what little they have they pluck out, as do alſo the *Jakubti*, *Tungusü* and *Kalmucks*. They are naturally a good harmleſs people, and have no idols of ſtone, wood, or any other materials, as the *Oſtiacks* have. They uſe no manner of ceremony in their devotion; but when they go out a hunting, they pray to the *Supreme Being* to bleſs them with ſucceſs. However, they have their *Schaumans*, or Magicians, and are a very filthy people. They do not build their huts on the ground, but upon four poſts, like ſome *Armenians*, and get up, by means of a ladder, to the top, where they enter through a hole. For their neceſſary occaſions they make uſe of a tub, which they have with them in the hut, and, when full, they carry it out, and make uſe of the ſame tub to bring in water, for other occaſions: A whole family will lie all naked together under one large coverlet. The *Ruſſians*, who trade with them, carry thither a kind of muſhrooms, called, in the *Ruſſian* tongue, *Muchumor*, which they exchange for ſquirrils, fox, ermin, ſable, and other furs: Thoſe who are rich among them, lay up large proviſions of theſe muſhrooms for the winter. When they make a feaſt, they pour water upon ſome of theſe muſhrooms, and boil them. They then drink the liquor, which intoxicates them; the poorer ſort, who cannot afford to lay in a ſtore of theſe muſhrooms, poſt themſelves, on theſe occaſions, round the huts of the rich, and watch the opportunity of the gueſts coming down to make water, and then hold a wooden bowl to receive the urine, which they drink off greedily, as having ſtill ſome virtue of the muſhroom in it, and by this way they alſo get drunk. In ſpring and ſummer they catch a large quantity of fiſh, and digging holes in the ground, which they line with the bark of birch, they fill them with it, and cover the holes over with earth. As ſoon as they think the fiſh is rotten and tender, they take out ſome of it, pour water upon it, and boil it with red-hot pebbles (as the *Finlandians* do their beer) and feed upon it, as the greateſt delicacy in the world. This meſs ſtinks ſo abominably, that the *Ruſſians* who deal with them, and who are none of the moſt ſqueamiſh, are themſelves not able to endure it. Of this liquor they likewiſe drink ſo immoderately, that they will be quite intoxicated, or drunk with it.

mon tradition had been handed down among them, that long before *Atlaſſow*, a certain Fedotow, who, probably, was the ſon of *Fedot Alexeew*, had, with ſome of his comrades, lived amongſt them, and intermixed with their *Kamtſchedale* women: they ſtill ſhewed the place of the *Ruſſian* habitations, near the mouth of the ſmall river *Nikul*, which falls into the *Kamtſchatka*, and therefore in the *Ruſſian* language is called *Fedoticha*. They were ſaid to be held in ſo much honour by the natives, as to be almoſt deified; for they imagined that no human hand could hurt them; till the *Ruſſians*, beginning to quarrel among themſelves, ſoon convinced the *Kamtſchedales* of their miſtake, when they perceived the blood to flow from the wounds they mutually received. This was the occaſion, that when ſome of them went afterwards over to the ſea of *Penſhinſky*, the remainder were, on this ſeparation, ſet upon, and all killed, partly by the *Kamtſchedales*, and partly by *Korjakes*, ſo that none of them remained when *Atlaſſow* arrived.

The river *Fedotcha* falls into the river *Kamtſchatka* on the South ſide, 180 Werſts * below *Werchni Kamtchatzkoi Oſtrog*. Upon this river *Fedoticha* were ſeen, at the time of the firſt expedition to *Kamtſchatka*, the ruins of two Simowies, or habitations, wherein *Fedotow* with his companions were ſuppoſed to have lived; but no body could tell the way by which theſe firſt *Ruſſians* came to *Kamtſchatka*. This was not known till the year 1736, when the particulars of this affair were found in the Archives of *Jakutzk*.

As mention has been made in the voyage of *Michael Stadukin*, in the year 1645, that a report had prevailed of a large iſland being then ſeen in the *Frozen Sea*, but which, at the ſame time, was not confirmed, we muſt therefore obſerve, that although many deſcriptions of voyages between the rivers *Lena* and *Kolyma* were found in the archieves of *Jakutzk*, yet not the leaſt notice has been taken of this iſland in any of them, notwithſtanding that it muſt neceſſarily have been ſeen (in caſe any ſuch had exiſted) by ſeveral veſſels which had been driven by contrary winds far enough from the ſhore to have perceived it. Two voyages may ſerve to prove this, both made in 1650, partly by one and the ſame company, ſo that the accounts of the one may ſerve to confirm thoſe of the other: We may likewiſe gather from them what toil and danger attends theſe voyages.

The firſt voyage was that of *Andrei Goreloi*, a *Coſſac*, who was diſpatched from *Jakutzk* in *July* 1650, and ordered to proceed by ſea

* Verſta, or Werſt, is a *Ruſſian* meaſure of land, uſed inſtead of miles, of 500 Saſches, or *Ruſſian* fathoms; 104 1-5th Werſts are equal to a degree of 69½ *Engliſh* miles.

to

to the river *Indigirka*, in order to make tributary the people dwelling above that, and the river *Moma*, which falls into the *Indigirka*. He arrived, on the laſt day of *Auguſt*, over againſt the mouth of the river *Chroma*, where he was frozen in, according to his account, two days voyage from the continent, to which he propoſed to have gone on foot over the ice: But he was then prevented, for the ice broke up again, and a violent tempeſt enſued, which laſted ten days, and drove his *Kotſche* ſtill farther into the ſea, where he was froze in again, and then had a journey of a fortnight over the ice on foot, to reach the land. In the mean while the *Kotſche* was wreck'd between the ice. *Goreloi* and his men had drawn with them, upon ſledges, ſome of the naval ſtores and proviſions, having loſt a great part in the ſea. They ſet out with ſledges drawn by dogs*, on the 5th of *October*, from the place where they reached the continent, and in four days arrived at the mouth of the river *Indigirka*; from thence they proceeded, on

* Dogs are very ſcarce in *China*, nor will they thrive there; wherefore merchants and travellers who go from *Ruſſia* thither, commonly carry ſome with them, which turn to a very good account, eſpecially if they are broke, and have learned ſome tricks. On the other hand, there are at *Thibet* and *Tanguht*, dogs of a vaſt ſize: This ſeems to agree with what *Marcus Paulus* relates of the large dogs in *Tangubtia*, as alſo with that paſſage in *Arianus*, and *Quintus Curtius*, where they mention, that King *Porus* made a preſent of two of theſe large dogs to *Alexander*. On the Eaſt ſide of the country of *Kamtſchatka*, towards the Sea, there lives a people, who keep no other ſorts of beaſts but dogs, which though they are but of a common ſize, are remarkable, in that they have hair of ſix inches long. In 1718, a certain *Waiwode* travelling in a ſledge with twelve dogs, towards the city of *Bereſowa*, got himſelf wrapped up in warm quilts, and girt faſt in the ſledge, in order to ſecure him from the ſeverity of the cold, and to prevent his falling out, in caſe the ſledge ſhould over-turn; the *Oſtiack*, who was his guide, ſkaited along ſide of him, (according to cuſtom, in caſe the ſledge ſhould over-turn, to raiſe it up again) and coming on a large plain, where the ground is generally covered man's depth with ſnow, the dogs (which the *Oſtiacks* alſo uſe for hunting) eſpying a fox at a diſtance, immediately flew in purſuit of their game, and run away with the *Waiwode*, with ſuch ſwiftneſs, that it was impoſſible for the guide to keep pace with them, and they ſoon got out of ſight. The guide followed the track, but did not come up to his paſſenger till the next morning, when he found him in the ſledge overturned, ſtill well wrapped up, and tightly girt into it. By good luck, a ſtump of a tree, which ſtood out above the ſnow, had ſtopped the ſledge, or elſe it might probably have coſt the *Waiwode* his life. Theſe dogs are able to draw great burdens, for, in the year 1718, Governor *Knees Miſcheuſki* ordered a whole pipe of brandy to be brought from the convent of *Ketſkoe* to the city of *Bereſowa*, which was done by ſixteen dogs. People never travel in the nights, but only in the days with dogs: In the morning, before they ſet out, each dog has two frozen fiſh, which is his allowance for the whole day. At night, when they come to their journey's end, theſe poor creatures are ſo weary, that they cannot eat, but preſently lie down to ſleep. Whenever any paſſenger comes to a ſtage, where he is to have freſh dogs, all the dogs of that village ſet up a moſt terrible howling, knowing that they are, ſome of them, to have the ſame fate.

the 12th of *November*, to *Ujandino Simowie*, where a Poud † of meal coſt eight Rubles ‡, on account that they had loſt the corn they had brought out with them, and no other ſupply had been ſent to that place.

The ſecond voyage was that of *Timofei Buldakow*, a *Coſſac*; who, in 1649, was ſent as commander to the river *Kolyma*, but had paſſed the winter at *Schigani*, on the river *Lena*. He arrived the 2d of *July*, 1650, at the mouth of that river, and ſailed from thence to the Gulph of *Omoloewa*. There he met with ice, and was driven between it for eight days together in the ſea. Near one of the iſlands, formed by the ſeveral branches of the *Lena*, he was obliged to beat his way through the ice, for two days, in order to reach it. At laſt it ſeemed as if the ſea was quite free from ice; wherefore he ſailed again towards the Gulph of *Omoloewa*, but ſtill found great ſhoals of ice there, among which he was driven about in the ſea for four days more, without any hopes of getting forward: His ſole endeavour was therefore to get clear from the ice, in order to return to the *Lena*, at the mouth of which river lay eight *Kotſches*, manned partly with *Coſſacs*, partly with merchants and *Promyſchleni*, all ready to put to ſea: A land-wind ſoon after aroſe, which removed the ice; and all the nine *Kotſches* paſſed the Gulph of *Omoloewa* at the ſame time. Beyond this Gulph lies an iſland near the land, behind which was, at that time, the uſual navigation. When they were going to enter the ſtreights that ſeparated this iſland from the continent, they found a ſhoal of ice, and the ſeveral crews of all the veſſels were obliged to join in aſſiſting each other to remove this obſtacle, before they could make their paſſage good; for the *Kotſches* were forced to be drawn by men; but after twenty-four hours navigation in theſe Streights, a favourable wind ſprung up, which brought them, in twenty-four hours more, to the mouth of the river *Jana*. Here a wind from off the ſea brought ſuch a quantity of ice together, that the *Kotſches* were almoſt jammed to pieces. But as the coaſts of the *Frozen Sea* are in

† Poud, a *Ruſſian* weight, of forty *Ruſſian*, or about thirty ſix *Engliſh* pounds.

‖ Rubel, is a *Ruſſian* ſilver coin, about the ſize of a crown piece, in value ten Griffwens, or one hundred Kopeiks; two Rubels are of equal value with a Ducat. They go generally in *Holland* for fifty-five or ſixty ſtivers, according as the Exchange runs. Formerly they had no other coin in *Ruſſia* but Denga's (of the value of half a Kopeik,) and their way of reckoning was to have a tally, and at the ſum of every hundred Denga's, they cut a notch upon the tally, which notch they called Rubel; and, therefore, when they afterwards coined ſilver coin, of juſt one hundred Kopeiks in value, they called it a Rubel, or Notch.

theſe

theſe parts ſloping, the great ſhoals of ice which ſink deep in the water, cannot come nigh to the ſhore, they work'd themſelves therefore very ſafely through, by keeping near to the land, and, on the 29th of *Auguſt* paſſed the Cape, which formerly was reckoned to be the moſt difficult place in this voyage, on account of its Northerly ſituation, and was therefore called *Swatoi Noſs*. They were almoſt oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Chroma*, when in the night between the 30th and 31ſt of *Auguſt*, the ſea was quite frozen over. *Buldakow*, and the crews of four other *Kotſches*, being not far from the ſhore, in one fathom water, propoſed, as ſoon as the ice ſhould be ſtrong enough, to tranſport their effects over it to the land; but theſe hopes vaniſhed; for on the 1ſt of *September*, when the ice was already half a ſpan thick, a violent-land-wind aroſe, and bore the ice up again, driving the *Kotſches* entangled among the ice into the open ſea, for five days together. A calm afterwards coming on, the ſea froze again in one night, and on the third day the ice was ſo thick, that they might paſs over it. Some men were then ſent out to take a ſurvey on which ſide the neareſt land lay; who found that the *kotſche* commanded by *Andrei Goreloi*, was a day's voyage more to the South than the other four. Wherefore they embarked, for the preſent, on board *Goreloi*'s *kotſche*, with their proviſions and other neceſſaries, that in caſe the ſea ſhould break up again, the way to the continent might be ſo much ſhorter; but when every thing was ready for the voyage, the ſea ſuddenly began to ſwell; the ice, which was already half an Arſchin * thick, broke in pieces, and a ſtrong land-wind ſpringing up, drove the *kotſches* ſtill farther into the ſea than before. This ſtorm laſted five days; after which the wind ceaſed, and the *kotſches* were frozen in a third time. They were then obliged to leave them, and proceed on foot over the ice to the continent, every one taking, upon a ſmall ſledge, as much proviſions and implements with him as he could draw. But even now they had much danger and fatigue to undergo; for the ice often broke under their feet, which obliged them to leap from one ſhoal to another, to throw over their proviſions and implements, and to pull one another over with poles and ropes. They at laſt arrived at the ſhore, near the mouth of the *Indigirka*, and thence proceeded up the river to *Ujando Simowie*, &c.

Two years after, *viz.* in 1652, we find the inſtructions of one

* Arſchin, is a *Ruſſian* meaſure, twenty-eight inches long, and is divided into ſixteen werſchocks, or parts, ſo that each quarter of this meaſure contains four werſchocks; three arſchin make a ſazohen, or *Ruſſian* fathom.

*Piati-*

*Piatidesatniks Iwan Rebrow*, who was sent as commander to the river *Kolyma*, in *Buldakow*'s room, to inform himself of the abovementioned great island in the Frozen Sea, which *Michael Staduchin* had reported. It is likewise probable, that the *Kolymisch*, and other commanders there, received the same instructions. But this is certain, that no accounts of the discoveries made by him, are to be met with in the Archives of *Jakutzk*. This affair has of late been brought upon the carpet again, and by express expeditions are treated in such a manner, that the reality of the said island seems to have gained some appearance of credit.

On *February* 20, 1710, the following accounts were taken down in writing, in the Chancery of *Jakutzk*, upon the interrogations and depositions of several Cossacs of *Jakutzk*, in relation to that and other islands situated opposite to the coast of *Kamtschatka*.

*Nikiphar Malgin* said, that in the time of *Knjas Iwan Petrowitsch Borjatinskoi*, *Waywode* of *Jakutzk*, (who, from 1667 to 1675, had presided in that government) he had proceeded by sea with a merchant named *Andrei Woripaew*, from the *Lena* to the river *Kolyma*; during which voyage they had mostly sailed along the continent as far as *Swjatoi Noss*; but afterwards, on account of the great quantity of ice, which barred up the shore, they had been obliged to keep out to sea. In this voyage, the pilot of their *Kotsche* had shewn them an island lying at a great distance off, on this side of the mouth of the river *Kolyma*, which was plainly discerned by all on board the vessel; and on their arrival at the *Kolyma*, one *Jacob Wjatka*, a merchant, told them in what manner nine *Kotsches* in company together had sailed from the *Lena* to the *Kolyma*, when three of these vessels were driven to that island; and how some people, who were sent ashore, observed the impression of the hoofs of unknown beasts, but saw no inhabitants: these *Kotsches* arrived at *Kolyma*; but he had never heard of an island situated opposite the mouth of the river *Lena*, &c.

This deposition contains also an account of an island, supposed to lie opposite to the country of *Kamtschatka*, but with so many uncertain circumstances, that it requires a good explanation, if the accounts published afterwards are to be rendered consistent with it. *Taras Staduchin*, a merchant, is said to have told *Malgin*, that many years before that, he had sailed with ninety men in a *Kotsche* from the river *Kolyma*, to make discoveries relating to the great cape of *Tschuktschy*; that they were not able to double it, but went over it on foot to the other side, where they built new vessels, in which they proceeded along

long the coaſts, and came to the mouth of the river *Penſchina*; that the place where they croſſed over was moſt remarkably narrow; but going farther, ſaid, that oppoſite to the mouth of the *Penſchina*, we may ſee an iſland in the ſea; which iſland, according to the relation of a woman, is inhabited by people who have great beards, wear long cloaths, and call the *Ruſſians*, Brethren. Theſe are the circumſtances that want a good explanation.

Firſt, It is poſſible, that the name of the river *Penſchina* may have been put by miſtake inſtead of the river *Kamtſchatka*; for, as improbable as it is, that *Staduchin* ſhould have ſailed all round *Kamtſchatka* to the river *Penſchina* in one voyage, ſo certain is it on the other hand, that oppoſite to *Penſchina*, there is no iſland to be met with in the ſea; and altho' there is none to be ſeen from the mouth of the river *Kamtſchatka*, yet the *Kamtſchedales* may have had an account of the iſlands that are known in thoſe parts. The great beards and long cloaths that are to ſhew a ſimilitude with the *Ruſſians*, ſeem to be borrowed from the nation of the *Kurilles*, who inhabit the iſlands ſituated to the South of *Kamtſchatka*; as indeed theſe, contrary to the nature of all the people of *Siberia* and *Kamtſchatka*, are bearded, and hairy on their bodies: But it is a miſtake, that they call the *Ruſſians* Brethren; for at the time of *Taras Staduchin*, the *Kurilles* had perhaps never heard of the *Ruſſians*. It may therefore be concluded, that *Staduchin* adopted the title of Brotherhood from the ſimilitude of their form of body, and *Malgin* might have aſcribed it to the *Kamtſchedales*, from a miſtake of memory.

*Iwan Schamaew* ſaid, That in the year 1700, he was ſent to *Kamtſchatka*, with *Timofei Kobelew*, the commander of that country: that they made uſe of rein deer, from *Anadirſk* to the river *Penſchina*, where they built veſſels, and proceeded in them by ſea to *Puſtoi Oſtrog*, (probably on the river *Puſtaia*) where they again got rein deer, with which they paſſed over a chain of mountains to the river *Kamtſchatka*; and that oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Penſchina*, there was a little iſland in the ſea: And laſtly, that in their return from *Kamtſchatka*, he had ſeen an iſland oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Karaga*, at the diſtance of a day's rowing from the continent, on which the Coſſac *Iwan Golygin* had been aſhore, with two others, where they found inhabitants; but theſe refuſing to pay tribute, they did not venture to go far from the ſhore, to take a more particular account of it.

*Michael Naſetkin* ſaid, that, in the year 1702, he had been ſent to *Kamtſ-*

*Kamtſchatka*,, when they took the ſame rout as in the former journey, by *Anadirſk* to the river *Penſchina*, from thence by water to the river *Leſnaia*, and from that place by land with ſledges to the river *Kamtſchatka*. From the mouth of this river an iſland might be ſeen, lying at a diſtance in the ſea; but it was uncertain whether it was inhabited or not, for the *Ruſſians* had never been upon it. From the South promontory of *Kamtſchatka*, he had ſeen iſlands, or land, ſuch as he had likewiſe obſerved on his return to *Jakutzk*, in his voyage by ſea, between the rivers *Kolyma* and *Indigirka*. This laſt land, or iſland, according to the account of the pilot *Danelo Monaſtirſkoi*, who at that time was with them, is contiguous to the land ſituated oppoſite to *Kamtſchatka*, and extends itſelf oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Lena*; but whether the land was inhabited or not, that pilot was entirely ignorant of.

*Alexei Porotow*, who had been at *Kamtſchatka* in the year 1704, ſaid the ſame as *Iwan Schamaew*, with reſpect to the iſland over-againſt the mouth of the river *Karaga*.

*Here ends the interrogations and depoſitions in the Chancery of* Jakutzk.

At the ſame time the *Stolnick* and chief commandant *Knjas Waſilei Iwanowitch Gagarin*, was preſent at *Jakutzk*, being diſpatched to *Siberia* by the Governor *Knjas Matfei Petrowitſch Gagarin*, his father's brother, with full power to make diſcoveries and better regulations. He delivered an order, on the 17th of *March*, to the *Waywode Trauernicht*, conſiſting of ſeveral heads, one of which was as follows: "That he ſhould make diligent enquiry about the iſlands ſituated oppoſite the mouth of the river *Kolyma*, and the land of *Kamtſchatka*; what people inhabited them; under whoſe juriſdiction they were; what was their employment; how large the iſlands were, and how far diſtant from the continent." The commanders and Coſſacks who were to be ſent to thoſe places, were to receive poſitive inſtructions with regard to theſe enquiries, together with the promiſe of a particular reward which they might expect for this ſervice from his *Czariſh* Majeſty, to whom an expreſs ſhould be ſent, with an account of what had been done therein.

Purſuant thereunto, orders, dated the 20th of *Aug.* and 9th of *Sept.* 1710, from the Chancery of *Jakutzk* were given to the commanders of *Uſt-Jana* and *Kolyma*, to make theſe diſcoveries their particular buſineſs; upon which a depoſition in writing was received from *Jacob Permakow*, a *Coſſac* of *Uſt-Jana*, which mentioned that he had

once

once ſailed from the *Lena* to the river *Kolyma*; and that on the farther ſide of the *Swatoi Noſs*, he had ſeen an iſland in the ſea, but did not know whether it was inhabited or not. There was likewiſe ſituated directly oppoſite to the river *Kolyma*, an iſland that might be ſeen from the continent, and mountains were obſerved upon it; but that it was alſo uncertain whether it was inhabited: this perhaps might be known from the *Jukagiri*, who dwelt thereabouts *.

The following is a letter from the Governor *Knjas Matfei Petrowitſch Gagarin*, dated the 28th of *Jan.* 1711, not only impowering, but poſitively enjoining the Waywode *Trauernicht* to proſecute theſe diſcoveries: "I have heard by *Coſſacs* and *Dworanes* from *Jakutzk*, "that you intend to ſend a party of *Coſſacs* and voluntiers to the New "Country, or Iſland, oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Kolyma*; but "that you heſitated about doing it without orders; therefore I have "found it neceſſary to tell you, that you ſhould by no means neglect "to do it; and if other iſlands may be diſcovered, you will be pleaſed "to do the ſame with reſpect to them. But above all things, the "expedition is to be made this preſent year, 1711. This I write to "you, by order of his *Czariſh* Majeſty.

"*Knjas Matfei Gagarin. Jan.* 28, 1711."

Hereupon the Waywode *Trauernicht* prepared for two expeditions, one to the mouth of the river *Jana*, and the other to the river *Kolyma*, in order to go in ſearch, of the pretended iſland, from both places at once; for which purpoſe, the commanders received orders either to proceed by ſea, or to travel over the ice, till a ſufficient certainty could be obtained, whether any ſuch iſland exiſted or not.

Concerning the firſt expedition, made under the conduct of the Coſſac *Merkurei Wagin*, I have found ſeveral writings in the Archives at *Jakutzk*; but they muſt be judiciouſly examined, and we muſt not implicitly believe every thing contained therein. *Wagin* departed from *Jakutzk*, in Autumn 1711, in company with eleven other *Coſſacs*; and in *May* 1712, made a voyage from *Uſt-Janſkoe Simowie* to

* *Jukagiri*, *Jukagri*, or *Jukairi*, are a Pagan nation, near the Frozen Sea, between the mouth of the river *Lena*, and the promontory of *Tabin*, otherwiſe called *Swjatoi Noſs*. The ſpeech of theſe people were like the gabbling of geeſe. *Forbiſher*, in his Travels, ſays the ſame of three ſavages, which were brought away from *Davis*'s Streights, *viz.* That they made ſuch a gabbling, and uttered nothing but inarticulate ſounds, except theſe two words, *Oxa indecha*. Theſe *Jukagiri* hang their dead on trees, but the ſkeletons, or bones of their parents and relations, they afterwards carry along with them, when they go a hunting. This agrees with what is affirmed of the *Samojedi*, who never bury the bones of their parents.

the Frozen Sea, in which *Jacob Permakow*, mentioned before, ſerved him as a guide. The carriage conſiſted, according to the cuſtom of the country, of Nartes, a kind of ſledges, drawn by dogs, in which they followed the coaſt to *Swiatoi Noſs*; they from thence entered the ſea directly towards the North, and ſailed to an iſland, which he found to be from nine to twelve days journey in circumference, deſtitute both of inhabitants and wood. From this iſland, it is ſaid, they ſaw another great iſland, or land, lying farther out in the ſea; but *Wagin* durſt not go over to it, as the ſpring was too far advanced, and he was in want of proviſions; he therefore returned to the continent, in order to provide himſelf with a ſufficient ſupply of fiſh during the ſummer, for making the voyage the following winter.

The place where he reached the continent on his return, was between *Swiatoi Noſs* and the river *Chroma*, and was called after *Kataiew Kreſt*, a *Jakutzk Coſſac*, who had formerly erected a croſs there. From thence he ſet out for the river *Chroma*, in order to catch fiſh; but on their way, he and his company were in ſuch extreme want of proviſions, that at firſt they eat the dogs which drew their ſledges, and afterwards mice, and other unclean animals. In this diſtreſs, deſpairing to reach the *Chroma*, they returned to the ſea coaſt, where they remained the whole ſummer, living ſparingly upon a few fiſhes, wild-ducks, geeſe, and their eggs.

In the mean while, the remembrance of the hunger they had ſuffered, and perhaps alſo the fear of being in ſtill more miſerable circumſtances by going in ſearch of the land they had ſeen, imbittered the minds of the *Coſſacs* who had come with *Wagin* from *Jakutzk*, in ſuch a manner, againſt him and the guide, that they murdered him, his ſon, *Jacob Permakow*, and a *Promyſchlenoi*. This fact was diſcovered by an accomplice, and the murderers ſeized; and on their examination, it appeared that the guide, *Jacob Permakow*, did not take that ſecond great iſland, which was imagined to have been ſeen from the firſt, to be really land, but that he thought it to be no more than vapours ariſing from the ſea. Perhaps doubts of ſome moment may likewiſe be raiſed againſt the reality of the firſt iſland.

The ſecond expedition from the river *Kolyma* was juſt as fruitleſs as this. It was to have been carried on by 50 men, in two veſſels; but there was only 22 perſons, who ſailed in one veſſel, and were conducted by a *Coſſac* named *Waſilei Staduchin*, who obſerved no more than a promontory, running Eaſt from the river *Kolyma* into the ſea; this was ſurrounded by firm ice, through which no veſſelwas able to paſs. No

iſland

iſland was to be ſeen, even at a diſtance. They uſed in this voyage a kind of boats, the boards of which were faſtened, or, in a manner, ſewed together, with ſtraps, and, from their conſtruction, have the name *Schitiki*; they are uſually five fathoms long, and two broad, with one deck, and a flat bottom caulked with moſs: They are properly made uſe of in the rivers, and in paſſing to them along the coaſts. The ſail conſiſts of ſoft rein deer ſkins, dreſſed; and, inſtead of ropes, they make uſe of ſtraps of elk ſkins; and the anchors are of wood, to which are faſtened great ſtones. Such a veſſel *Staduchin* had; what wonder is there, then, that he could make no diſcoveries?

In the year 1714 a new expedition was prepared from *Jakutzk*, for the ſame place, under the command of *Alexei Markow*, who was to ſail from the mouth of the *Jana*; and if the *Schitiki* were not fit for ſea voyages, he was to conſtruct, at a proper place, veſſels fit for proſecuting the diſcoveries without danger. Each veſſel was allowed a ſailor, who had been ſent by the Governor *Knjas Gagarin* to *Jakutzk*, in order to diſcover the navigation from *Ochozk* to *Kamtſchatka*.

As ſoon as *Markow* and his company were arrived at *Uſt-Janſko Simowie*, he ſent an account, dated *Feb.* 2, 1715, to the Chancery of *Jakutzk*, mentioning, that it was impoſſible to navigate the ſea, as it was continually frozen, both in ſummer and winter; and therefore the preſcribed expedition was no otherwiſe to be carried on but with ſledges drawn by dogs. He accordingly ſet out on ſledges from *Uſt-Janſko Simowie*, in company with nine other perſons, on the 10th of *March* in the ſame year, and returned on the 3d of *April* to the ſame place. His account is as follows: That he went ſeven days, as faſt as his dogs could draw him (which, in good ways and weather, is 80 or 100 werſts in a day *) directly towards the North, on the ſea upon the ice, without diſcovering any land or iſland: That it had not been poſſible for him to get any farther, the ice riſing up there in the ſea like mountains: That he had climbed to the top of ſome of them, and looked at a diſtance round about, but could diſcern no land. At laſt, wanting food for his dogs, many of them died.

Nothing farther was done, till, in 1723, when *Fedot Amoſſow*, a *Sin-bojarſkoi* of *Jakutzk*, renewed the old report of an iſland in the Frozen Sea, and offered to go thither, and render its inhabitants tributary. According to his account, the iſland extended from the mouth of the *Jana* beyond the mouth of the *Indigirka*. He was ſent with a party of *Coſſacs*; but he went to the river *Kolyma* to diſcover the iſland from thence. On *July* 13, 1724, he intended to ſet ſail from

* That is, 53⅓ or 66⅔ *Engliſh* ſtatute miles.

the mouth of this river for the open ſea; but found, as he reported, ſuch ſhoals of ice before him, that he was hindered in his free navigation. He was therefore obliged to ſail along the coaſt, eaſtwards, to the habitations of *Kopai*, which he reached on the 7th of *Auguſt* the ſame year. He could hardly get along the coaſt on account of the ice; and the wind being moſtly contrary, he was unable to proceed, and forced to lay aſide all hopes of making diſcoveries, in order to haſte back to the *Kolyma*. As I knew this man at *Jakutzk*, I have learnt from him, that the habitations of *Kopai* were about 200 werſts diſtant, to the eaſtward, from the mouth of the *Kolyma*. He alſo made mention of a ſmall iſland ſituated very near the continent; and at the beginning of the following winter he made a journey, with ſledges; of which he gave the following account to the Chancery of *Jakutzk*: That on the 3d of *November*, 1724, he ſet out from *Niſchnoe Kolymſkoe Simowie*, and met with land in the Frozen Sea, from whence he came back to *Kolyma* on the 23d of the ſame month. Upon this land he ſaw nothing but old huts covered with earth; but it was unknown by what people they were inhabited, and whither they were gone. The want of proviſions, and eſpecially of food for the dogs, had obliged him to turn back, without making any farther diſcoveries. This journey was very difficult, on account of the ſhoals of ice, which were of a great height, and the ſea-ſalt, with which all the ice was covered.

To this account I may add ſome explanations, which I got by word of mouth from *Amoſſow*, at *Jakutzk*. The place where he left the continent to go over to the land, he ſays, lay between the rivers *Tſchukotſchia* and *Alâſea*; it was an iſland that might be encompaſſed in a ſledge drawn by dogs, in a day; and that it was ſituated about the ſame diſtance from the continent; from whence it might be ſeen, on account of its high rocky mountains. Behind it there were two other iſlands, as mountainous as this, ſeparated by narrow ſtreights, on which he had not been, and conſequently did not know their extent. The firſt iſland was without foreſts, and he had obſerved the footſteps of no other animals but thoſe of the rein-deer, whoſe uſual food is moſs. The old huts were built of wood driven aſhore by the ſea, and covered with earth. If this be fact, then it ſeems that the former inhabitants were *Jukagiri* or *Tſchuktſchi*, who, on the conqueſt of the regions about the *Indigirka*, *Alaſea*, and *Kolyma*, fled over thither, and afterwards returned to the continent again.

What has been alledged may, or may not, be ſufficient to put the certainty of the pretended iſland in the Frozen Sea out of doubt; yet

yet no farther reſearches have been made about it. I cannot deny, that neither *Amoſſow*'s written account, nor his verbal relation of it, have ſatisfied me; for there is reaſon to ſuſpect, that it was not ſo much the deſign of making new diſcoveries in ſuch diſmal parts, as ſome other ſelf-intereſted motives, that occaſioned his offering to undertake this expedition: It is not improbable but it proceeded from his deſire of becoming a commander, with which ſeveral advantages are connected; or to trade with the nations in thoſe parts, and for this purport, he might have revived the report of the iſland in the Frozen Sea. Yet we may ſuppoſe, that he afterwards found it neceſſary to put his written accounts and verbal relations into ſuch order, as to prevent his meeting with reproach. But if this be the caſe, it may farther be aſked, Why he did not, in the beginning of his account of the expedition, to *Jakutzk*, give an exact deſcription of the way he went to the iſland, of its extent, and all other circumſtances? And why he did not, at that time, make mention of the other two iſlands ſituated behind the firſt? One might likewiſe aſk, How it could be poſſible that *Amoſſow*'s iſland, lying ſo near the continent, ſhould not have been diſcovered in former voyages to the river *Kolyma*, of which I have found ſo many circumſtantial accounts in the archives of *Jakutzk*. At leaſt its ſmall circumference, according to *Amoſſow*, does not afford a confirmation of the old report, of a large country extending from the mouth of the river *Lena*, or *Jana*, as far as oppoſite to the river *Kolyma*, or rather farther.

All theſe circumſtances being duly conſidered, we cannot help thinking, that Meſſ. *De Liſle* and *Buache* acted rather too precipitately, when in their new maps of the diſcoveries of *Kamtſchatka*, publiſhed at *Paris*, they repreſented an iſland lying under the 73d degree of North latitude, oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Kolyma*; and beyond it, under the 75th degree, a large country, ſaid to have been diſcovered by the *Ruſſians* in 1723. They refer, in this reſpect, to written accounts received by M. *De Liſle* at *Peterſburg*, and eſpecially to a map made by Col. *Scheſtakow*, a *Coſſac*. They alledge theſe hiſtorical circumſtances: That, in the firſt iſland, a *Schelagan* Prince, called *Kopai*, was made priſoner of war, and was the conductor of the diſcovery of the great country; but this is the very thing which ſhews the little ground there is for theſe allegations; for it is not to be ſuppoſed, that the writings of the archives I have quoted will be called in queſtion, as they may ſerve for the beſt explanation that can be given. *Kopai* did not live upon an iſland, but on the continent; neither was he ever a priſoner to the *Ruſſians*: The firſt time he paid tribute to *Ruſſia*,

*Ruſſia*, was to *Willegin* the *Promyſchlenoi*; and he did the ſame in 1724 to *Anoſſow*: But ſoon after he deſerted the *Ruſſian* party, and killed ſome of *Anoſſow*'s company. This is all that is known of him. According to the verbal depoſition of *Anoſſow*, there was ſituated, not far from his habitations, a little iſland near the continent. Is it not, then, ſufficiently clear, whether it is this, or ſome other iſland, which *Scheſtakow*, and after him Meſſ. *De Liſle* and *Buache*, have placed oppoſite to the river *Kolyma*?

As to *Scheſtakow*, and his map, it is to be obſerved, that he could neither read or write, and that he got the ſituation of the countries and rivers, marked upon his maps, merely from his memory, or from the accounts he had heard from others who could ſcarce write. He was, in 1726, at *Peterſburg*, where he formed great projects for ſubduing the ſavage *Tſchuktſchi*. At that time ſeveral of his maps appeared, and I myſelf received one of them, but never ventured to make uſe of it, except in what was confirmed by more certain accounts. According to this map, *Kopai*'s iſland is ſituated two days voyage from the continent, and takes up almoſt as much room in length as the oppoſite coaſt, between the rivers *Alaſcia* and *Kolyma*. It is farther mentioned, that it is inhabited by a reſolute people called the *Schelages*. Behind it, to the North, there is a coaſt, under the name of the *Large Country*, between which and the iſland, it is ſaid, in expreſs words, there is not quite two days voyage. This being founded neither on verbal nor written accounts, may juſtly be conſidered as an addition by *Scheſtakow*, to what he had heard from others. So that I cannot ſee what can be taken from this, more than from the other reports, to aſcertain the ſituation of this land, or even ſuppoſing its reality to be unqueſtionable.

But what ſhall we ſay, when we conſider the teſtimony of *P. Avril*, who pretended to have heard at *Smolenſk*, in 1686, that that country was inhabited, and full of foreſts. I think this is plainly contrary to fact, if the former diſcoveries are to be depended upon; and if we conſider, that along the coaſts of the Frozen Sea there are no foreſts, nor will theſe northerly regions admit of any. In the mean while, the ſuppoſition given in writing by *P. Avril*, to the Waywode of *Smolenſk*, that by means of this iſland *America* was peopled from *Aſia*, does honour to thoſe times, if even the iſland itſelf ſhould be proved to have no exiſtence; as it may be underſtood of the iſlands and the continent oppoſite *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs*, of which we ſhall mention what has been diſcovered in former times, without the navigation of *Deſchnew*.

*Scheſtakow*'s

*Sheſtakow*'s map is here very imperfect; it only ſays, " upon the " Noſs dwell the ſtubborn *Tſchuktſchi*, who throw ſtones with ſlings. " There are alſo many red foxes." And oppoſite, on the Eaſt ſide, there is marked a large iſland, which is thus deſcribed: " An iſland " oppoſite *Anadirſkoi Noſs*, well peopled: Upon it are found abund- " ance of all ſorts of animals. The inhabitants are not tributary, and " are ſubject to none." Another map, which I got at *Jakutzk*, from a *Dworanin*, named *Iwan Lwaw*, who is the author of it, furniſhes us with ſome more accounts. It repreſents a two-fold Noſs; the far-thermoſt towards the North Eaſt, which, from the nation of the *Tſchut-ſchi*, is commonly called *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs*, and has there the name of *Schelatzkoi*, from the *Schelagen*, who are a particular race among the *Tſchutſchi*. The other, which lies South from this, tho' it is far enough from the river *Anadir*, is called from that river *Anadirſkoi Noſs*. It is therefore a miſtake in *Sheſtakow*'s map, to call the former by the name of the latter, which he has quite omitted. *Tſchukotſkoi*, or *Schelatzkoi Noſs*, is not limited, as the author of the map did not know its extent. In a large gulph between *Tſchukotſkoi* and *Anadirſkoi Noſs* lies an iſland, which is ſaid to be inhabited by the *Tſchuktſchi*, and an-other over-againſt *Anadirſkoi Noſs*, the one farther from the continent than the other; which are deſcribed in the following manner: " It " is half a day's voyage from the continent to the firſt iſland, which is " inhabited by a people whom the *Tſchuktſchi* call *Achjuchaljat*; theſe " ſpeak their own language, wear cloaths of duck-ſkins, and live by " catching of ſea-horſes and whales; and, as the iſland is without fo- " reſts, they boil their proviſions with train-oil. The ſecond is two " days voyage diſtance from the firſt; the inhabitants are called, in the " *Tſchuktſchi* language, *Peekeli*. They have teeth ſet in thro' their " cheeks; they live in fortified places, and are alſo cloathed with " duck-ſkins." I am of opinion, that the ſituation here given to this iſland is a miſtake, and that it muſt be looked for over-againſt *Tſchu-kotſkoi Noſs*. Beyond this iſland there is marked a large country, the inhabitants of which are called by the *Tſchutktſchi*, *Kitſchin Eljat*. They have their own language; wear cloaths of the ſkins of ſables, foxes, and rein deer; dwell in fortified places; have their habitations in the ground, and ſhoot with bows and arrows. All the animals of whoſe ſkins they make cloaths, are found there. Their wood is pine, fir, birch, and the larch tree.

To this I will add another map, whoſe author was alſo an inhabitant of *Jakutzk*, in which *Schelatſkoi Noſs* is unlimited, as in the former. Of the inhabitants, it is here ſaid, " That they ſpeak their own lan-

" guage,

" guage, are warlike, and cannot be subdued; because, if any one of " them is taken prisoner, he kills himself." This is in general the case with respect to the rest of the people of *Siberia*, whose first subjection was mostly effected by taking some of them prisoners, and keeping them as hostages for the fidelity of the rest; or, as they used to express it in *Siberia*, as *Amanaten*. Over-against *Schelatzkoi Noss* another unlimited country presents itself; the inhabitants of which are called, in the *Tschuktschan* language, *Kykykmei*, and are said to resemble the *Jukagiri*. Other accounts, which I shall mention here, are found in the writings of our chiefs.

On the 14th of *March* 1710, the Waywode *Dorofei Trauernicht* enquired at *Jakutzk* of several *Cossacs*, who had been at *Anadirskoi Ostrog*, about all the circumstances of the *Tschuktschan* nations, and received from three *Cossacs*, viz. *Timofei Daurzow*, *Fedor Porrei*, and *Peter Mungal*, the following relation: In 1701, the tributary *Jukagiri*, under *Anadirskei Ostrog* complained to the commander of that place, that they were often attacked by the *Tschuktschi*, and desired that some *Russians* might be sent with them to subdue these enemies. The commander gave them twenty-four men, who were joined by 110 *Jukagiri*; these were eight weeks in their march, from *April* to *June*.

Their first action was to summon thirteen habitations of the *Tschuktschi*, on the sea coast of *Anadir*, to submit themselves, and pay tribute; but this they refused, and an engagement ensuing, about ten men of the *Tschuktschi* were killed, and some men, women, and children made prisoners; the men whom they thought to keep as hostages, soon after killed each other. Those who had escaped, raised near 300 men at *Tschuktschoi Noss*, who ventured to make head against the *Russians* and *Jukagiri*, but were again defeated; near 200 were left dead on the spot, and the rest ran away. The next day, an army of above 3000 *Tschuktschi* was seen on their march: The battle began in the morning, and lasted till the evening; in which many of the *Tschuktschi* were slain; and yet the *Russians* and *Jukagiri* had not one man killed, and only ten wounded; but tho' the *Tschuktschi* retired, yet they encamped in such a manner, that the *Russians* and *Jukagiri* were surrounded by them for five days: At last, however, they escaped, and retired to *Anadirskoi*, without loss. Upon this occasion, the following observation has been made: Although it is not to be denied that the *Tschuktschi* are expert at throwing stones with slings yet in war they mostly make use of bows and arrows. The *Tschuktschoi Noss* is quite destitute of all kind of wood: Those of the *Tschuktschi*, who keep tame rein deer, live by them; but those who walk on foot,

foot, live by catching ſea-horſes, whales, and other fiſh; ſuch of them as keep rein deer dwell between the rocky mountains, in the midſt of the Noſs, but the footmen live on both ſides on the ſea coaſt. There are no ſables on the Noſs, and no other wild animals, than red foxes and rein deer. Sea-horſes teeth are found in abundance on the coaſt.

Thus far the written relation taken down at *Jakutzk*. *Matfei Skrebykin*, a *Pietideſatnik* of the *Coſſacs*, who at that time was ſent as commander to *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, received orders to get better intelligence concerning the *Tſchuktſchi*, and the country inhabited by them. The following account is the fruit of his endeavours.

" *Anadirſk*, *Sept.* 2, 1711. The depoſition of the *Jakutzich*, *Coſ-*
" *ſac Peter Ilun Sin Popow*, of the *Promiſchleni*, *Jegar Waſiliew Sin*
" *Toldin*, and the newly baptized *Jukagir*, *Iwan Waſiliew Sin*
" *Tereſchkin*. *Peter Ilun Sin Popow*, was ſent with the other two,
" who ſerved him as interpreters, on the 13th of *January*, 1711, by
" the governor *Fedor Kotkowſkoi*, to the banks of the river *Anadir*, to
" receive the Tribute from ſome tributary *Tſchuktſchi*; they were
" likewiſe ordered to go to the Noſs, and endeavour by admonitions
" to bring the obſtinate *Tſchuktſchi* under obedience; and receive
" hoſtages from them; they were alſo to get full intelligence concern-
" ing their manner of living, their cuſtoms, the nature of the country
" and the neighbouring iſlands; then to return to *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*.
" *Popow* went from the mouth of the river *Anadir* to the *Tſchuktſchi*,
" who lived beyond a Gulph, and from thence to *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs*.
" He every where met with a denial with reſpect to their rendering
" themſelves ſubject, and paying tribute. The *Tſchuktſchi* ſaid, that,
" ſome *Ruſſians* had formerly come to them in *Kotſches* by ſea, to
" whom they paid no tribute, and therefore they would not do it now;
" conſequently, he ought to expect no hoſtages from them. Tho'
" he failed in this point, yet he had an opportunity to make many uſe-
" ful obſervations, and got ſuch intelligence as were agreeable to his
" orders. The ſolemn obligation, or oath of the *Tſchuktſchi*, conſiſts
" in calling on the ſun to be ſecurity for their promiſes. Thoſe of
" them who dwell on the Noſs keep tame rein deer, on account of
" which they often change their habitations between the rocks; but
" thoſe who have no rein deer live on both ſides of the Noſs, on the
" banks of the ſea, where the ſea horſes are uſed to come on ſhore.
" They have immoveable huts, which they dig in the ground, or
" cover with earth. Both live by hunting wild rein deer, catching
" whales, ſea horſes, ſeals, *&c.* and upon roots and herbs. Oppoſite

" to the Noſs on both ſides, as well in the ſea of *Kolyma*, as in that " of *Anadir*, an iſland is ſaid to be ſeen at a great diſtance, which the " *Tſchuktſchi* call a large country, and ſay, that the inhabitants there- " of bore holes through their cheeks, in which they inſert large teeth. " Theſe people are different in their language, and manner of living, " from the *Tſchuktſchi*, who have waged war againſt them time out " of mind. Their weapons are, like thoſe of the latter, bows and " arrows. *Popow* ſaw ten men of theſe people thus disfigured with " theſe projecting teeth; who were priſoners of war among the " *Tſchuktſchi*; and he obſerved, that the teeth, thus ſet in, were cut " from thoſe of the ſea horſe. In ſummer time they ſail over in one " day to this land, in *Baidares*, a ſort of veſſels conſtructed with whale- " bones, and covered with ſeal-ſkins; and you may likewiſe in the " winter ſeaſon travel thither in one day, on ſledges drawn by rein deer " if you go ſwift. There are no other animals on the Noſs than foxes " and wolves, and even theſe very ſcarce for want of wood, but on the " other land are found all ſorts of beaſts, as ſables, ſeveral ſorts of foxes, " wolves, white bears, ſea otters, *&c.* The inhabitants keep large " herds of tame rein deer; they live by catching of ſea animals, feeding " likewiſe on berries, roots, and herbs. They are like the *Tſchuktſchi*, " without any governors. Their wood is cedar, fir, ſeveral ſorts of " pines, and the larch tree; which kinds of wood *Popow* obſerved in " the *Baidares* and huts of the *Tſchuktſchi*. According to the com- " putation of *Popow*, the number of the *Tſchuktſchi* that live on the " Noſs, as well of thoſe that have rein deer, as of thoſe that are with- " out, is about 2000 men, or more; whereas the Iſlanders are ſaid to " be three times that number; which is confirmed, not only by the " priſoners, but by one of the *Tſchuktſchi*, who has often been there. " They go in ten weeks from *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog* to the Noſs with laden " rein deer, and conſequently not very faſt, but they muſt not be de- " tained on the roads by violent winds, which are generally accompani- " ed with ſnow. The way leads by a rock called *Matkol*, ſituated in " the middlemoſt or deepeſt part of a great bay."

To this I will add another relation, received from ſome *Tſchuktſchi* at the time they come to *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, in order to acknowledge the dominion of the *Ruſſians*.

" The ſolemn obligation, or oath, with the *Tſchuktſchi*, is, by " conſtituting the ſun, or their ſorcerer-prieſts, their ſureties. They " live on the Noſs, beyond the rivers *Anadir* and *Kolyma*; their num- " ber may be between 3 or 4000, and upwards; they themſelves do " not know how ſtrong they are, ſince they have but little know-

" ledge

" ledge of numbers. As they live without government, every one " does what he pleaſes; however, thoſe who belong to one tribe " keep together. Their herds of tame rein deer are numerous; on " which they live, and, at the ſame time they catch wild rein deer, " ſea-horſes, whales, and other ſea animals, which likewiſe ſerve " them for food, there are no wild land animals upon the Noſs, ex- " cepting foxes and wolves; fables are not found there, becauſe there " are no woods. The Noſs is full of rocky mountains, and the low " grounds conſiſt of land covered with turf. Oppoſite to it lies an " iſland, within ſight, of no great extent, and void of wood. It is in- " habited by people who have the ſame aſpect as the *Tſchuktſchi*, but " are a quite different nation, ſpeaking a language peculiar to them- " ſelves, though they are not numerous. It is half a day's voyage, " with *Badaires* from the Noſs to this iſland. There are no fables on " it, nor any other animals than foxes, wolves, and rein deer. Be- " yond the iſland is a large continent that can ſcarcely be diſcerned " from it, and that only in clear days; in calm weather one may row " over from the iſland to that continent, which is inhabited by a " people who in every particular reſemble the *Tſchuktſchi*. There " are large foreſts of fir, pine, larch, and cedar trees; great rivers " flow through the country, and fall into the ſea. The inhabitants " have dwellings and fortified places of abode, environed with ram- " parts of earth; they live upon wild rein deer and fiſh; their " cloaths are made of fable, fox, and rein deer ſkins, for fables and " foxes are there in great abundance. The number of men in that " country may be twice or three times as many as that of the " *Tſchuktſchi*, who are often at war with them." *Thus far this re-* " *lation deſerves credit*; *but now follows ſomething fabulous.* "There " are likewiſe ſaid to be people in this country who have tails like " dogs; ſpeak their own language; are often at war among them- " ſelves, and are without religion: They wear cloaths like the for- " mer, and live upon wild rein deer and ſea animals. Another na- " tion there, is ſaid to have feet like ravens, covered with the ſame " kind of ſkins as theirs. They never wear ſhoes or ſtockings." We ſhall be ſo juſt as to excuſe the fables of the wild *Tſchuktſchi*, ſince *European* authors, writing of unknown countries, have fallen into no leſs abſurdities.

The reſt of the relation regards, in the firſt place, the diſtance between *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs* and the mouth of the river *Anadir*: To determine which, the *Tſchuktſchi* ſaid, " That they ſpent three weeks, " or leſs time, in ſailing with their *Baidares* from the inner bay of

" the *Anadir* along the coaſt, to the extremity of the Noſs, over-
" againſt which the iſland lies." A circumſtance next occurs, which we ſhould have entirely omitted, as foreign to our purpoſe, if it did not contain a very particular cuſtom of the *Tſchuktſchi*, ſo contrary to the cuſtoms of all civilized nations, that, though ſomething of it is mentioned in Mr Reſident *Weber*'s *Ruſſia changed* *, yet, without farther confirmation, is hardly to credited. What M. *Paulus Venetus* relates † of the hoſpitality of the inhabitants of the country of *Cumul*, and what is obſerved of *Tibet* ‡; what *Witſen* ‖, and the Jeſuit *Trigaut* repeats after him; and what this latter § alledges about the land of *Caſchemir*, is, out of all doubt, the ſame with the *Tſchuktſchi*:
" When a ſtranger comes to them, let him be of their own, or another
" nation, they offer him, upon the firſt ſalutation, their wives and
" daughters, as bedfellows. If they are not handſome enough, or are
" too old for the gueſt, they bring him ſome from among their neigh-
" bours; whereupon the woman preſents him a baſon of urine, freſh
" made in his preſence, with which he is obliged to rince his mouth:
" If he refuſes the offer, they hold him for their enemy; but, from
" his accepting of it, they conclude his ſincere friendſhip." This cuſtom was not only related by the *Tſchuktſchi* at *Anadirk*, but is alſo contained in the written account I have given, and I have frequently heard it at *Jakutzk*, from people who have been amongſt the *Tſchuktſchi*.

We ſhall not amuſe ourſelves with comparing theſe accounts where they contradict each other; the difference only conſiſts in things of no moment. The chief point ſtill remains the ſame, that there is a real ſeparation between the two parts of the world, *Aſia*, and *America*; that it conſiſts only in a narrow ſtreight; and that, within this ſtreight, there are ſituate one or more iſlands; by which the communication is facilitated between theſe two large continents, whoſe inhabitants had knowledge of each other from antient times. Tho' I cannot prove by written originals, ſome other accounts of thoſe parts as I have done thoſe hitherto alledged, yet they do not ſeem to me unworthy of attention. People muſt believe me upon my word, and give credit to me when I aſſert, that they have been told me at *Jakutzk* by perſons of credit.

We have already ſaid, that *Nikifor Malgin* makes mention of certain bearded people inhabiting an iſland, in the *Penſchinſkan* ſea, whom I have interpreted to be the *Kuriles*. The inhabitants of *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog* report the ſame of the people of the continent, lying over againſt

* Vol. i. p 406. † Book i. Ch. 46. ‡ Book ii. Ch. 37. ‖ North and Eaſt *Tartary*. Edit. ii. Pag. 334, 335. § Pag. 341.

the

the habitations of the *Tſchuktſchi*. There is ſaid to live ſomewhere in that country, a people who have a great deal in common with the *Ruſſians*, not only in reſpect to their beards and cloathing, but likewiſe in their trades and employments: The *Tſchuktſchi* get platters and other wooden veſſels from them, that are hardly to be diſtinguiſhed from thoſe made in *Ruſſia*. Some imagine that they are really deſcended from the *Ruſſians*, and that their anceſtors were driven by ſhipwreck to this country, where they have remained.

It is reported, that in the year 1715, there lived a man of a foreign nation at *Kamtſchatka*, who, upon ſeeing the *Kamtſchatkan* cedar nuts, and the low ſhrubs on which they grow, ſaid, that he came from a country where there were larger cedars, which bore bigger cedar nuts than thoſe of *Kamtſchatka*; that his country was ſituated to the Eaſt of *Kamtſchatka*; that there were found in it great rivers, which diſcharged themſelves Weſtward into the *Kamtſchatkan* ſea; that the inhabitants called themſelves *Tontoli*, and reſemble, in their manner of living, the people of *Kamtſchatka*, making uſe of leathern boats, or *Baidares*, like them. That, many years before that, he went over, with ſome more of his countrymen, to *Karaginſkoi Oſtrow*, where his companions were all ſlain by the inhabitants, and he alone made his eſcape to *Kamtſchatka*.

On *Karaginſko Oſtrow*, an iſland oppoſite to the river *Karaga*, from whence it derives its name, it is ſaid, there are obſerved in the ſubterraneous dwellings of the inhabitants, great beams of pine and fir trees, with which theſe caves are partly wainſcotted: The inhabitants being aſked whence they procured this timber, ſince ſuch kind of wood was not found in *Kamtſchatka*, or the neighbouring iſlands? They made anſwer, that, ſometimes, they were driven on ſhore by Eaſterly winds, and that having no wood of their own on the iſland, they made uſe of them.

It has ever been obſerved in *Kamtſchatka*, that, in winter time, a ſtrong Eaſt wind drives ice to the *Kamtſchatkan* coaſt in two or three days, and then certain birds annually fly from the Eaſt, which having remained ſome months on thoſe coaſts, return back. What elſe can be concluded from this, but that the continent oppoſite to the country of the *Tſchuktſchi* extends to the Southward of *Kamtſchatka*; and may not this be likewiſe conjectured from the Martins found in that country, which are not to be met with even in the northermoſt countries, nor yet in *Siberia*, except in the dominions about *Catherinebourg* and the *Iſettiſchen Province*. Perhaps in the former relations of the neighbouring continent, martins are to be underſtood inſtead of ſables: This

is

is certain, that the *Tſchuktſchi* get cloaths of martin ſkins from thence; ſome of which have now and then been brought from *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog* to *Jakutzk*, as is known to every perſon thereabouts.

'Tis probable, that by the continent ſaid to be ſituated Eaſtward, near to *Kamtſchatka* and the country of the *Tſchuktſchi*, is to be here underſtood, not a large iſland, but *North America* itſelf; ſince its nature, ſo far as it is known, gives ſufficient grounds for this ſuppoſition. *French* travellers who have been in *Louiſiana* make mention of a great river that flows Weſtward to the ſea, from the head of the *Miſſouri*, which empties itſelf into the *Miſſiſippi*: 'Tis true, they have not been on that river; but 'tis enough that they have intelligence of it from the heathen nations inhabiting thoſe parts. The *Miſſouri* falls into the *Miſſiſippi* between the 39th and 40th degree of North latitude, it is reckoned between four hundred leagues and upwards, from their conflux to the middle of the courſe of the *Miſſouri*, and, from thence, ſix days journey to that river; which, according to the account of the people in thoſe parts, falls into the unknown Weſterly ocean *. Meſſ. *De Liſle* and *Buache*, repreſent this ſea in the maps they have lately publiſhed, as a great lake, or gulph, ſituated between the 40th and 50th degree of North latitude; but the ground on which they ſupport their opinion does not ſeem to me of ſufficient weight. *William De Liſle*, the royal geographer, in the year 1697, firſt figured to himſelf the ſituation of the Weſtern ocean in this manner, following therein the deſcription of journeys in which were contained the depoſitions of certain *Americans* dwelling about this ſea, and the rivers falling into it. In the year 1700 he compoſed a book on this ſubject, in hopes of animating the *French* miniſtry to make preparations for new diſcoveries. But when we come to a cloſe examination of the teſtimonies alledged therein, we find that the greateſt part of them do not ſpeak of a ſea or gulph, but of the Pacific Ocean itſelf; and that the reſt are doubtful; but they are all of them of ſuch a nature, as not to be of force enough to confirm an opinion, againſt which there are ſo many objections founded on ſufficient grounds. Let us look on the map of *America*: The river *Miſſouri* falls into the *Miſſiſippi*, ſomewhat below the 40th degree of North latitude; we will ſuppoſe it flows from the North Weſt, as the people in thoſe parts alledge: From its mouth to its head it is reckoned 800 *French* leagues: How does that conſiſt with

* We will take the lateſt Teſtimony: Memoire ſur la Louiſiane, par M. Le Sage du Pratz in *Journal Oeconomique*, 1751, *Sept.* P. 140. On croit que le Miſſouri vient de l'Oueſt. Selon le Rapport des Peuples du pais; il a 800 lieues de cours, & a ſix Journées au Nord du milieu de ſon cours ontrouve une autre riviere, qui contant du levant au couchant va ſe jetter dans *la mer inconnue de l'Oueſt*.

the

the Weſtern ſea, in the manner Meſſ. *De Liſle* and *Buache* figure it to themſelves? For here this Weſtern ſea, or gulph, which they believe, takes up the ſame parts which the river *Miſſouri* ought to paſs through; but it is ſtill ſix days journey from the river *Miſſouri* to the river that falls into the Weſtern ſea. This river is of conſiderable bigneſs, conſequently its head muſt be very remote; but Meſſ. *De Liſle* and *Buache* repreſent it quite narrow and ſhort, probably from no other reaſon but to have ſufficient room for their Weſtern ſea. They add to the arguments of M. *De Liſle* ſen. the travels of *John de Fuca*, which we have ſhewn above cannot be relied on; and when M. *Buache* endeavours to confirm his opinion by the teſtimonies of modern travellers of the preſent century, we may eaſily ſee that it is, by that means, only the more weakened *. We may ſubjoin to this, that the *Americans* call the Weſtern ſea *an unknown Sea, i. e.* ſuch a one whoſe bounds or limits they neither do know, nor can know; but ſuppoſe it to be a ſea or gulph, ſurrounded on all ſides with land, how comes it to paſs that the people who live near it ſhould be unable to give better accounts of it? Therefore, in my opinion, the Weſterly river, ſo often mentioned, falls into the *Pacific* Ocean, either oppoſite to *Kamtſchatka*, or over againſt the country of the *Tſchuktſchi*; and the accounts received from the *Tſchuktſchi* are hereby confirmed, with theſe we muſt therefore at preſent content ourſelves, till ſome future diſcoveries ſhall more exactly aſcertain the ſituation of thoſe parts.

We now proceed to the iſlands ſituated towards the South from *Kamtſchatka*, the diſcoveries of which we ſhall likewiſe conſider, in the ſame order as they have been gradually made, and ſo far as the propoſed period of time has a ſhare in it.

The country of *Kamtſchatka* has been known at *Jakutzk* ever ſince the year 1690; but at that time only from a mere report. Hence it is that *Iſbrand Idos*, in his travels to *China*, Chap. xx. and in his map belonging to that work, was able to mention it. The firſt expedition to it was made by ſixteen *Jakutzk Coſſacs* in 1696, under the command of *Lucas Semoenow Sin Moroſko*, in which they did not quite reach the river *Kamtſchatka*, but were content to receive tribute from a *Kamtſchedale Oſtrog*, and to return with it to *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, from whence they had been diſpatched. The Piatideſatnik *Wolodimer Atlaſſow*, who is commonly repreſented as the diſcoverer of *Kamtſchatka*, was at that time commander at *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*: He had ſent *Mo-*

* New Charts of the Diſcoveries of Admiral *Fontes*, and other Navigators, *&c.* with their Explications, *&c.* by M. *De Liſle*, printed at *Paris* in 1753, 4to. Geographical and Phyſical Conſiderations on the new diſcoveries, *&c.* by M. *Buache*. *Paris*, 1753, 4to.

*roſko*

*roſko* to the *Korjakin* on the river *Opuka*, to make them tributary; the reſt *Moroſko* did without orders. *Atlaſſow* writes of him, that he came within four days voyage of the river *Kamtſchatka*, and a verbal tradition agrees with this, which terminates his voyage at the river *Tigil*. *Moroſko*, on the contrary, mentions, that he had been only one day's voyage diſtance from the river *Kamtſchatka*. In the *Kamtſchedale Oſtrog* he found ſome unknown writings, which he brought home along with him. Theſe we ſhall prove to have been *Japaneſe*, for, the year enſuing *Atlaſſow* following the ſteps of *Moroſko*, ſet out, with a more numerous party, for the river *Kamtſchatka*, took poſſeſſion thereof, by erecting a croſs * at the conflux with the river *Kanutch*, and founded a Simowie in the place were *Werchnei Kamtſchatkoi Oſtrog* was afterwards built, he at that time met a *Japaneſe*, who had been ſhipwrecked two years before on tha coaſt of *Kamtſchatka*, at the mouth of the river *Opala*, to the Southward of *Bolſchaia Reka*.

The account of *Atlaſſow*'s voyage, which *Strahlenberg* has annexed to his deſcription, is a relation, containing probably his anſwers to many queſtions that were put to him, and which, to all appearance, were taken down in writing at *Moſcow*. It is no depoſition before a magiſtrate, and does not agree with that which *Atlaſſow* mentions in a petition, after his arrival at *Jakutzk* in the year 1700; nor with that which he depoſited at *Moſcow*, in the *Siberian* Prikaſe, in 1701; it ſeems rather to have been ſet down by ſome inquiſitive private perſon; wherefore it ismuch more circumſtantial than the other; and *Atlaſſow* may have been aſked about more things than he knew, and yet he might be unwilling to plead ignorance; ſome falſe circumſtances in relation to the country may have ariſen from that cauſe; or, to judge with greater candour, from a defect in his memory. Others are manifeſtly owing to a miſunderſtanding of the writer, or, perhaps, of the tranſlator. In *Strahlenberg*'s relation, the *Japaneſe* whom *Atlaſſow* found in *Kamtſchatka* is called an *Indian*; and in the remarks it is ſaid, that he was a *Japaneſe*, who afterwards was brought to *Moſcow* when the *Swedes* were in *Siberia*. This *Japaneſe* ſeems to have been confounded with another, who will be mentioned hereafter. *Atlaſſow* himſelf, in his petition, has called the ſtranger a priſoner from the kingdoms of *Oſacka*. What elſe can here be underſtood, but the great trading town of *Oſacka* in *Japan*? *Atlaſſow* took him with him in his voyage to *Jakutzk*;

* The Croſs was ſtill ſeen at the time of the laſt *Kamtſchatkan* expedition, and had the following inſcription: *On the 13th of* July, *in the Year* 1205, [This date is from the *German* copy; but the Editor thinks it ſhould be 1697] *this Croſs was erected, by* Piatdeſiatnick Wolodimir Atlaſſow, *and his company, conſiſting of* 55 *men.*

but

but it does not appear that he arrived there. *Strahlenberg*'s intelligence ſays, that he ſtaid behind at *Anadirſk*, on account of weakneſs.

Theſe intelligences alſo contain ſomething relative to the iſlands ſituated to the South of the country of *Kamtſchatka*. We call them the *Kurilian* iſlands, becauſe ſeveral of them are inhabited by the *Kuriles*. The people in that country are ſaid to have told *Atlaſſow*, that it contained walled towns; but what ſort of people dwelt in them no body could tell. *Strahlenberg* here remarks, that the Northerly *Japaneſe* iſlands are here meant; and, indeed, ſince the iſlands ſituated in the neighbourhood of *Kamtſchatka* have no ſuch towns, it ſeems that this circumſtance muſt have its riſe from the ſaid *Japaneſe*. What is pretended of a continental commerce between theſe *Japaneſe* iſlands and the country of *Kamtſchatka*, has been found without foundation in later times. All commerce from *Japan*, towards the North, is confined to a few of the neighbouring iſlands, or to the land of *Jeſo*: Of this the *Japaneſe* in *Kamtſchatka* ſeem to have ſpoken: The reſt of the iſlands, and the country of *Kamtſchatka* itſelf, were entirely unknown to the *Japaneſe*, who were ſtranded on *Kamtſchatka*, the winds and weather having driven them thither againſt their will, which we have had ſeveral opportunities of learning, as the following times have furniſhed ſome more inſtances of *Japaneſe* ſhips being ſtranded on the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka*. Two points that were learned from this firſt *Japaneſe* were eſſential: Firſt, that the kingdom of *Oſacka*, as *Atlaſſow* calls it, or the land of *Japan*, is not at a very great diſtance to the Southward from *Kamtſchatka:* And, ſecondly, That the intermediate ſpace at ſea is filled up with ſeveral iſlands of different ſizes, the inhabitants whereof, (the *Kuriles)* are called by the *Japaneſe*, *Jeſo*, or *Eſo*; out of which the *Europeans* have formed the name of the land of *Eſo*, or *Jeſſo*.

*Atlaſſow* was to have made a ſecond voyage to *Kamtſchatka* in the year 1702, after his being declared chief of the *Coſſacs*, as a reward for his ſervices; but his bad conduct on his return to *Jakutzk*, brought upon him a ſevere ſcrutiny; on account of which his ſecond voyage thither commenced no ſooner than the year 1706. During the mean time, the three Oſtroges *Werchnei*, *Niſchnei*, and *Bolſcheretſkoi*, where built in the years 1701, 1702, and 1703, by other commanders ſent from *Jakutzk* to *Kamtſchatka*; and, in the year 1706, a beginning had been made in the conqueſt of the Southermoſt part of *Kamtſchatka:* Upon which occaſion the *Ruſſians* having come to the extremity of the neck of land, convinced themſelves of the ſituation of the neareſt *Kurilian* iſlands, by inſpection; though only at a diſtance, and without leaving

 the

the continent. The reaſon why theſe diſcoveries were not proſecuted farther at that time, was, doubtleſs, owing to an inſurrection amongſt the *Kamtſchedales*, in the year 1707, in which *Bolecheretſkoi Oſtrog* was loſt, and the whole garriſon aſſaſſinated. On the contrary, in the year 1711, a mutiny of the *Coſſacs* againſt their commander (in which *Wolodimir Atlaſſow*, with two others, loſt their lives) brought about a favourable change in theſe parts; for the guilty, in order to exculpate their crime, firſt reduced the *Kamtſchedales* of *Bolſcheretſkoi*, then rebuilt *Bolſcheretſkoi Oſtrog*, and leaving therein a ſtrong garriſon, were, after that, ſo aſſiduous in diſcovering the *Kurilian* iſlands, that the inhabitants of the two firſt no longer heſitated to acknowledge themſelves ſubject to the dominion of the *Ruſſians*. In the preceding year, *viz.* in *April* 1710, another *Japaneſe* veſſel was ſtranded on the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka*, in the *Kaligirian* bay (which lies North of *Awatſcha*) ten of the crew, who came aſhore, were ſurprized by the *Kamtſchedales*, and after a ſharp engagement, wherein four of them were killed, the remaining ſix were made priſoners. Of theſe ſix perſons, four fell into the hands of the *Ruſſians*; one of whom, called *Sanima*, was in 1714 ſent to the imperial court of *Peterſbourg*; and as they ſoon learned enough of the *Ruſſian* language to give diſtinct anſwers to the queſtions that were put to them, the knowledge of the ſituation and nature of the *Kurilian* iſlands was ſet in a ſtill plainer light by their relations, and by what was otherwiſe learnt from the *Kurilians*. But before we ſpeak of this, we muſt ſee what came to the knowledge of the *Ruſſian Coſſacs* from their own experience, in relation to the two firſt iſlands, in the year 1711.

*Danilo Anziphorow*, and *Iwan Koſirewſkoi*, ringleaders of the *Coſſac* mutiny, had (as was ſaid above) rebuilt *Bolcheretſkoi Oſtrog*, and ſubdued the *Kamtſchedales* who dwelt in thoſe parts. Hereupon they ſet out, on the firſt of *Auguſt* 1711, with as many men as they could ſpare, without weakening *Bolſcheretſkoi*, and paſſed over a ſtreight with ſmall *Baidares*, to the firſt iſland, where a multitude of the *Kuriles* ſtood aſſembled at the mouth of the rivulet *Kudutugan*; an engagement immediately enſued between them and the *Ruſſians*. The firſt iſland is not, however, inhabited by proper *Kuriles*: Theſe are, ſtrictly ſpeaking, the poſſeſſors of the ſecond and following iſlands; but it is uſual in *Kamtſchatka* to give the name of *Kuriles* even to the inhabitants of the continent South of *Bolſchaiareka* and *Awatſcha*, as they differ in dialect from the *Kamtſchedales*. A lake in the midſt of the country is called *Kurilſkoe Oſero*; and the *Kamtſchedale Oſtrog*, ſtanding on an iſland in this lake, bears the name of *Kurilſkoi Oſtrog*.

The

The inhabitants of this country ſeem to be the ſame with thoſe of the firſt iſland, who might have fled thither from the continent ſince the year 1706, and have formed a new nation. I follow herein ſome written intelligences, founded on the common uſe of the name. The conſequence of the engagement was, that the inhabitants of the iſland, after loſing ten men, and having many more wounded, promiſed an eternal ſubjection, though no tribute was received from them immediately; for the iſland had neither ſables nor foxes, neither did the otters uſe to make their appearance in the ſea hereabouts. The inhabitants lived by catching of ſeals, the ſkins of which, together with thoſe of ſwans, wild geeſe, and ducks, ſerved them for cloathing. As for the reſt, the *Coſſacs* greatly praiſed theſe people for their valour in war; and they had not met with any like them in all *Kamtſchatka*. Three *Kurilian* veſſels, built at the firſt iſland, was uſed in the navigation to the ſecond iſland, which immediately took place.

On this ſecond iſland, according to the *Coſſacs*, dwelt a people called *Jeſowitenes*: Theſe aſſembled, near a brook termed *Jaſſowilka*, in great numbers, and completely armed; therefore the *Coſſacs*, who were but few, and were moreover in want of powder, would not venture to engage them; they rather endeavoured, by good words, to perſuade the iſlanders to acknowledge themſelves ſubject to *Ruſſia*, and to pay a certain tribute: But theſe anſwered, "Hitherto we have been "ſubject to nobody, and have known nothing of paying tribute. Sa- "bles and foxes are not found amongſt us; but in winter time we "catch beavers, and theſe we have already ſold to ſtrangers who come "to us from a neighbouring country, which you ſee lying there to- "wards the South, and who give for them iron tools, muſlin, and "other goods; conſequently you have no tribute to expect now." What they intended to do for the future they did not declare; wherefore the *Coſſacs* found it adviſeable, after ſtaying two days on this iſland, to return to the continent, and arrived, on the 18th of *September*, at *Bolſcheretskoi*. The name of *Jeſſowitenes*, ſeems to be an imitation of the name *Jeſo*; by which name the *Kuriles* are known among the *Japaneſe*; and as, in all probability, this name was handed down to the *Coſſacs* of *Kamtſchatka* by means of the ſtranded *Japaneſe*, ſo we may conclude that, from this and the ſecond iſland, the nations of the *Kuriles*, as has been already mentioned, had their real origin.

After this firſt attempt, two other expeditions were made, in 1712, and 1713, from *Kamtſchatka* to the *Kurilian* iſlands, both foundedon an order received from *Jakutzk*. This order was occaſioned by the inſtructions given to the Waywode *Trauernicht*, by the Prince *Waſilei*

*Iwanowitſch Gagarin*, as is mentioned above; in which inſtructions it was, amongſt the reſt, recommended to the care of the Waywode, to have enquiry made after the iſlands ſituated near *Kamtſchatka*, and a deſcription given of them. Both expeditions were performed under the conduct of *Iwan Koſirewſkoi*, the *Coſſac*, who ſeems to have been the moſt aſſiduous in getting intelligence from the ſhipwrecked *Japaneſe*. He afterwards, in the year 1717, turned Monk, and from that time was called *Ignatei Koſirewskoi*. He came in 1720 to *Jakutzk*, and in 1730 to *Moſcow*; from whence an account of his merit was ſent to *Peterſburgh*, and inſerted in the *Peterſburgh Gazette* of the 26th of *March*. His whole life was a chain of broils and diſquietudes; but this is not to the purpoſe. His intelligences, which he delivered, in *Kamtſcatka*, to the commanders there, and afterwards in the Chancery of the Waywode of *Jakutzk*; as alſo to Capt. *Bering*, on his coming to *Jakutzk* in 1726, are altogether remarkable; they were accompanied with a kind of charts, in order to repreſent, in a plainer manner, the continent and the iſlands; of all which I will here give an extract.

Firſt of all, a low promontory extends from the ſouth end of *Kamtſchatka*, to the diſtance of 15 or 20 werſts, into the ſea; it is about 400 fathoms broad; and, on account of its ſquare figure, is called *Lopatka*, *i. e.* a Shovel.

From this promontory one may row over the ſtreight with *Baidares* in two or three hours, to the firſt iſland, called *Schumtſchu*, which is inhabited by the *Kuriles*. A remarkable difference between theſe and the *Kuriles* that inhabit the iſlands ſituated farther towards the ſouth, conſiſts in this, that the latter wear long hair; whereas the former have their heads ſhaved to the neck; and when they ſalute any one, they bend their knees. The ſoutherly *Kuriles* come ſometimes hither for the ſake of trade; the goods which they take back with them are, ſea beavers, foxes, and eagles feathers, wherewith they plume their arrows.

Of the ſame nature is the ſecond iſland, named *Purumuſchur*, which is ſituated only three or four werſts from the firſt. The inhabitants make a ſort of ſtuff, wove from nettles, with which they cloath themſelves; but, by trading with the remote *Kuriles*, they likewiſe get ſilk and cotton ſtuffs; and a ſort of veſſels, which probably muſt be porcelaine. He praiſes their valour and dexterity in war: Their arms, according to his account, are bows and arrows, together with pikes and ſabres; and they are, moreover, covered with armour.

One may, in fair weather, paſs over the ſtreight with *Baidares*, lightly

lightly loaded, in half a day, to a third iſland, called *Muſchu*, or *Onikutan*, which is alſo inhabited by *Kuriles*, who manufacture ſtuffs made of nettles, and catch ſea beavers and foxes. There are no ſables to be found on this and the two aforementioned iſlands. But the inhabitants go, for the ſake of hunting, to ſome iſlands ſituated on one ſide thereof; and ſometimes viſit the continent of *Kamtſchatka*, where they buy beavers, foxes, and other merchandize, with which they trade to the iſlands ſituated farther to the South. Many of them underſtand the language of the *Kamtſchedales* dwelling on the river *Bolſchaia*, with whom they trade and intermarry.

On the Weſt ſide of theſe three inhabited iſlands, there are three uninhabited ones, lying in the following order:

1. *Ujachkupa*, oppoſite to the iſland of *Schumtſchi*, at ſome diſtance: Upon it ſtands an high mountain, which, in clear weather, may be ſeen from the mouth of the river *Bolſchia*. The inhabitants of the firſt and ſecond iſland, as likewiſe ſome from the continent of *Kamtſchatka*, come now and then over to this iſland in the hunting ſeaſon.

2. *Sirinki*, a ſmall iſland towards the Weſt, oppoſite to the ſtreight, which ſeparates the ſecond and third iſlands.

3. *Kukumiwa*, likewiſe a ſmall iſland, ſituated to the South-weſt of the former. Theſe two latter ones are both viſited by the inhabitants of the before-mentioned iſlands, in the hunting ſeaſon.

We proceed now in the order of the iſlands that extend themſelves towards the South. The fourth is called *Araumakutan*, and is uninhabited, having a volcano upon it. The ſtreight between this iſland and *Muſchu*, as alſo that between this and the following iſland *Siaſkutan*, are but about half as broad as that between the ſecond and third iſlands.

*Siaſkutan*, the fifth iſland, has a few inhabitants. This is the market or rendezvous for the inhabitants of the before-mentioned and following iſlands, where they meet to trade.

*Ikarma*, is a ſmall uninhabited iſland, to the weſtward of *Siaſkutan*.

*Maſchautſch* is ſuch another, ſouth-weſt from *Ikarma*.

*Igaitu*, is an iſland, like the former, to the ſouth-eaſt of *Siaſkutan*. Theſe three iſlands are not reckoned in following the order in which they extend to the South.

From *Siaskutan* it requires a whole day to croſs over, with heavy-laden *Baidares*, to the next iſland *Schokoki*, which is to be conſidered as the ſixth in order: But between this and the following iſland, the diſtance is but half as much.

*Motogo*, the ſeventh.

*Schaſkowa*,

*Schaſhowa*, the eighth.
*Uſchiſchir*, the ninth.
*Kitui*, the tenth iſland.

Theſe are all but ſmall iſlands, in which there is nothing worthy of obſervation, but that the ſtreights between them, and between *Kitui* and the following iſland of *Schimuſchir*, are ſo narrow, that one may row over them in light *Baidares*, in leſs than half a day's time; heavy laden *Baidares* require half a day, and ſometimes more. There is a ſtrong current between theſe iſlands, eſpecially at the time of ebb and flood, which laſt riſes very high in thoſe parts, and therefore many people loſe their lives in attempting to croſs over at that time. On the iſland of *Kitui* there grow reeds, which are uſed for arrows.

*Schimuſchir*, the eleventh iſland, is inhabited, and the ſtreight between it and the following iſland, *Iturpu*, is ſomething broader than the former.

*Tſchirpui*, an iſland out of the number, is ſituated to the Weſt, of the Streights between *Schimuſchir* and *Iturpu*. Upon it is an high mountain.

*Iturpu*, the twelfth iſland, is large, and well peopled; its inhabitants are called by the *Kuriles* of the aforementioned iſlands, *Kytch-Kuriles*; but the *Japaneſe* call them *Eſo*. Their language and manner of living differ from the former; they ſhave their heads; their ſalutation conſiſts in bending of the knees; but as to their valour, and dexterity in war, they may be preferred to the former. Great foreſts, and various ſorts of wild beaſts are found here, particularly bears: Here and there are alſo rivers, the entrances of which afford commodious bays, wherein large ſhips may anchor ſafe from the winds and waves. This has been particularly taken notice of, becauſe, on the other iſlands, there is found but little wood, and no ſhelter for large ſhips.

*Iturpu* is only divided by a ſmall ſtreight from the thirteenth iſland, named *Urup*, the inhabitants of which latter are the ſame ſort of *Kuriles* with thoſe on the former. They manufacture ſtuffs ſpun from nettles; but buy cotton and ſilk ſtuffs at *Kunaſchir*, with which they trade to the firſt and ſecond iſlands, receiving in exchange the ſkins of ſea-beavers and foxes, as alſo eagles feathers. It has been affirmed that they are under no ſubjection; which may be much more certainly concluded of the inhabitants of *Iturpu*.

There lies a narrow ſtreight between *Urup* and the fourteenth iſland *Kunaſchir*, which is yet larger than either of thoſe already mentioned. The inhabitants are very numerous, and of the ſame nature with the

two

two former; but it is uncertain whether they are free people, or dependant on the town of *Matmai*, which ſtands on the iſland of the ſame name; for as they frequently go over to *Matmai*, on account of trade, ſo thoſe of *Matmai* frequently come over to them. Many *Kamtſchedales*, of both ſexes, are kept as ſlaves upon *Iturpu*, *Uurup*, *Kunaſchir*, and *Matmai*. How far it is from *Kunaſchir* to the iſland of *Matmai*, is not certainly known.

The iſland of *Matmai* is the fifteenth, and concludes this range, and is the largeſt of them all; it is inhabited by the ſame people of *Eſo*, or *Kytch-Kuriles*. The *Japaneſe* have built a town on this iſland, called by the ſame name, *Matmai*, which ſtands upon the South Weſt ſhore, and is inhabited by *Japaneſe*. People are baniſhed thither from *Japan*, and a garriſon kept there for the defence of the place, which is ſufficiently provided with cannon, muſkets, and and all other arms and warlike ſtores. There are, beſides, ſtrong guards on the Eaſt and Weſt coaſts, to obſerve narrowly every thing that happens. The inhabitants of the iſland bring into the town fiſh, blubber, and ſkins of beaſts, by way of traffick.

Between the iſland of *Matmai* and the principal iſland of the empire of *Japan*, there is but a ſmall ſtreight, the navigation of which is very dangerous, particularly at the time of flood and ebb, on account of the many rocky capes which project on both ſides.

Though many pieces of intelligence were alſo received concerning the iſland of *Japan*, yet I ſhall only mention the principal ones.

The name of the chief iſland is *Niphon*, after which the whole empire is named: *Japan* is a name entirely unknown on that iſland, and is to be attributed to the *Portugueſe*, who thus pronounce the *Chineſe* word, *Ge-puen*, properly, *Dſchebyng*, whereby *Japan*, or rather *Niphon*, is called. The chief town of the country, in which the King has his reſidence, lies on the river *Jedo*, which empties itſelf into a great Bay, at a ſmall diſtance from the town. The *Japaneſe* who related this and many other circumſtances, when at *Kamtſchatka*, ſeemed to be worthy of credit, ſince moſt of their accounts agree with what we know of *Japan* from *Kaempfer* and others.

I cannot help obſerving one thing, which contradicts the diſcoveries made by the ſhip *Caſtricom* in 1643, and all the repreſentations of *Jeſo*, which have, ſince that time, appeared in maps and charts, *viz.* That, according to the depoſition of the *Kuriles* and *Japaneſe* at *Kamtſchatka*, that country is divided into ſeveral iſlands; whereas, according to the former, they form only one great iſland. We might, perhaps, have ſome reaſon for doubt in this point if every thing mentioned by the *Japaneſe*,

*Japaneſe*, was not confirmed by the diſcoveries of our navigators, as ſhall be ſhewn in its proper place. It is probable that the *Dutch* on board the ſhip *Caſtricom* looked upon the Streights between the iſlands to be only bays, and never examined them particularly : But what can be ſaid with regard to the ſtrong currents which run in theſe Streights, at the time of low and high water ? Theſe ought not to have eſcaped the obſervations of the *Dutch* ; and if they did obſerve them, why did they not enquire into theſe openings, whereby they would have diſcovered that, inſtead of one, there were ſeveral iſlands ? To reconcile theſe contradictory accounts, a medium may, perhaps, be found, that will prejudice neither party. Suppoſe *Jeſo* was really at the time of the *Dutch* navigation only one iſland, as is deſcribed by the ſhip *Caſtricom* ; but let us acknowledge, at the ſame time, as a thing well known, that our earth is ſubject to many ſudden and ſtrange changes : Great earthquakes ſwallowing up countries and iſlands, and producing in their ſtead new ones : Now, theſe are very frequent in thoſe parts ; therefore the land of *Jeſo* might, after the voyage of the *Dutch*, have been torn into ſeveral leſſer iſlands by an earthquake. This ſeems to be, at leaſt, more equitable, than when Meſſ. *De Liſle* and *Buache* call in queſtion the modern diſcoveries made in our times, on account of the ſituation of the land *Jeſo*, as deſcribed by the ſhip *Caſtricom*.

We ſhall make mention of ſome other iſlands, ſituated to the South of the river *Ud*, on the continent of *Siberia*, which are commonly called the *Schantarian* iſlands. The name ſeems to be old ; for it has its origin from the *Giljackes*, a people who dwell near the mouth of the river *Amur*, and, about the middle of the laſt century, were ſubject to the *Ruſſian* empire, as I have ſhewn in *The Hiſtory of the River Amur*. At that time the *Ruſſians*, probably, enquired of the *Giljackes* for the name of theſe iſlands : Theſe latter, not knowing any particular name they had, anſwered *Schantar*, which ſignifies, in the *Giljackiſh* language, an iſland in general. But though theſe iſlands were, from that time, known to the *Ruſſians*, yet we do not find, in any written accounts, that any body had taken the pains to make a more exact enquiry about them, till, in the year 1710, when the Prince *Waſilei Iwanowitſch Gagarin*, among other preparations at *Jakutzk*, committed this affair to the Waywode *Trauernicht*. It was only known in general from the relations of ſome *Coſſacs* and *Tunguſes* who had been at *Udſkoi Oſtrog*, that theſe iſlands might be ſeen from the mouth of the river *Ud* ; that the firſt iſland was ſituated a day's voyage from the continent, likewiſe the ſecond from the firſt, and the third from the ſecond, at the ſame diſtance ; that many ſables and foxes were found upon them, and

that

that the *Gilijackes* uſed to viſit them merely on account of hunting; probably, becauſe the *Gilijackes* have larger and ſtronger veſſels than the *Tunguſes*, whoſe canoes of birch bark ſewed together, are not at all fit for croſſing the ſea. There were no written accounts about it till after the year 1709, when the Waywode *Trauernicht*, of his own accord, ordered the commander *Sorokoumow*, who was ſent to *Udſkoi Oſtrog*, to ſail to the *Schantarian* iſlands, and make enquiry in relation to their nature and ſituation, bringing back to *Jakutzk* certain intelligence of theſe particulars: For although he did not perform this voyage himſelf, yet he brought back with him ſome writings containing the above depoſitions of the *Udſkoi Coſſacs* and *Tunguſes*.

Hereupon *Trauernicht* gave freſh orders to the commander *Waſilei Ignatiew* (who was ſent the following year to *Udſkoi Oſtrog*) concerning the navigation of the *Schantarian* iſlands, and provided him, at the ſame time, with all materials requiſite for building and equipping a ſhip on the river *Ud*, in which the navigation might be ſafely and conveniently made. The commander of *Udskoi* purſuant thereto charged ſome *Coſſacs* with this commiſſion; who in the year 1712, ſet ſail in two boats from *Udskoi Oſtrog*, and followed the coaſt as far as to the river *Tugur*, where they remained the whole ſummer, to obtain a ſupply of fiſh, to ſupport them during their voyage. In the mean while another company of *Coſſacs* joined them, who had been diſpatched from *Udskoi* for the ſame purpoſe. They agreed to build a larger veſſel, of the ſame conſtruction with thoſe uſed in the frozen ſea; in which, when finiſhed, they ſet ſail in *March* 1713. Their leader being called *Semoen Anabara*: They followed the coaſt to a Promontory, from whence they rowed over in three hours to the firſt iſland, on which they perceived neither man nor beaſt, except one black bear. Having paſſed the night on this iſland, they went to the ſecond, which paſſage they were half a day in making: Here they alſo ſaw nothing but bears; wherefore, on the third day, they paſſed to the third iſland; how long they were on their paſſage is not mentioned. They arrived there on the 29th of *June*, and found ſables and foxes, wherefore they reſolved to ſtay there the following winter, in hopes of obtaining great advantages by hunting. They here found a woman, whoſe language they did not underſtand (probably a *Giljack* woman); whom they kept with them for a month, ſhe was then miſſing without their knowing what became of her. *Anabara* ſent ſome of his people to the river *Tugur*, to fetch a freſh ſupply of fiſh, but they never returned; and only four then remained with him on the iſland, whom the want of proviſions hindered from gaining any intelligence of its extent, and other properties; for

no one went above a day's journey from their place of abode; this the hunting of fables required, ſince, on all ſides, at that diſtance, traps were ſet, which every day were looked after, to ſee if any fables were caught in them: There were alſo wolves and bears on the iſland. The woods conſiſts of larch trees, firs, birch, and aſpens. Two of the company died on the iſland, and three ſailed back to the continent on the 29th of *June*, 1714, where they arrived on the firſt of *July* following, without landing on any other of the iſlands. From thence they came, in ten days, to the river *Ud*, and afterwards went to *Udskoi Oſtrog*. After their arrival at *Jakutzk*, depoſitions of their voyage were taken down in writing in the chancery, on the 20th of *October* in the ſame year, from which materials I have compiled this relation.

Hitherto there was no other way to *Kamtſchatka*, but by *Anadirsk*, which was attended with great fatigue and expence, and was very dangerous on account of the *Korjacks*, who commonly lying in wait for the *Ruſſians* that travelled either to or from *Kamtſchatka*, killed them and divided the booty. This occaſioned the propoſal of diſcovering a way to it by ſea from *Ochotzk*.

They had not indeed at *Ochotzk*, veſſels fit to navigate the ſea; nor was the uſe of the compaſs known there, till in the year 1714, when expreſs orders from the great Emperor *Peter* I. were ſent to the governor Prince *Gagarin* to ſupply theſe deficiencies. In the beginning the governor thought they might be able to do without the aſſiſtance of theſe, for his firſt order relating to the navigation by ſea to *Kamtſchatka*, dated 17 *Feb.* 1713, and directed to the Waywode *Jeltſchin*, contains nothing about ſhip-building, nor people experienced in navigation. But, then, the conſequence of this order was nothing elſe than the arrival of the *Dworanin Iwan Sorokaumow*, at *Ochotzk*, with twelve *Coſſacs*, who was charged with the affair at *Jakutzk*, in the autumn of the ſame year; and after having committed many diſorders there, was brought back under an arreſt to *Jakutzk*, without having done any thing worthy of notice. It was highly neceſſary therefore, for the governor to ſend thither immediately ſome ſailors and ſhipcarpenters. Theſe arrived at *Jakutzk* on the 23d of *May* 1714 under the conduct of *Coſmas Sokolow*, with twenty other *Coſſacs*; and were diſpatched to *Ochotzk* on the third of *July*; by theſe the diſcovery was made.

One of the ſailors who was a *Dutchman*, a native of *Hoorn*, named *Henry Buſh*, was ſtill alive at *Jakutzk* in 1736, when I reſided there, and upon my enquiry, told me the following particulars!

That after their arival at *Ochotzk*, the carpenters built a veſſel for the

ſea

ſea ſervice, after the manner of the *Ruſſian Loddies*, with which they formerly uſed to ſail from *Archangel* to *Meſen*, *Puſtoſero*, and *Nova Zembla*. This work took them up the year 1715. The veſſel was a very good and durable one. It was eight fathoms and a half long, three fathoms broad, and drew, when laden, three feet and a half of water. The firſt voyage was undertaken in *June* 1716. They followed the North-eaſt coaſt, as far as the country about the river *Ola*, and wanted to continue this courſe ſtill farther; but a contrary wind drove the veſſel acroſs the ſea to *Kamtſchatka*. They firſt got ſight of a Promontory, ſituated North of the mouth of the river *Tigil*, where they caſt anchor. Some of the company went aſhore to ſeek for ſome inhabitants; but found only empty huts. The *Kamtſchedales* had obſerved the approach of the veſſel, and out of fear were fled into the woods and mountains. Hereupon our navigators ſet ſail again, and paſſing the *Tigil*, arrived in one day at the brook *Chariuſowka*, near to the mouth of which two ſmall iſlands are ſituated; the firſt, which is the largeſt, lies about five Werſts from the continent; the ſecond, conſiſting merely of rocks, lies a little farther off. From *Chariuſowka* they proceeded the following day to the river *Itſcha*, and having kept the ſea all night, made the land in the morning: Here they put ſome people aſhore; but found neither inhabitants nor habitations, and ſoon came back: Wherefore they followed the coaſt ſtill farther, and came to the river *Krutogorowa*. They intended to make this river, but miſſed its mouth; and finding a convenient bay to the South of the river, caſt anchor. As they examined the country, they met with a *Kamtſchedale* girl, who was ſearching the fields for roots fit for eating, ſhe ſhewed them ſome habitations, in which then dwelt twelve *Kamtſchedale Coſſacs*, who were there in order to receive tribute; theſe being ſent for, ſerved them for guides and interpreters. The veſſel was brought to the mouth of the river *Kompakowa*, where they reſolved to winter. At that time the ſea caſt upon the ſhore a whale that had in its body an Harpoon of *European* workmanſhip, marked with *Roman* letters. In the beginning of the month of *May*, 1717, they put to ſea again; but it was yet full of ice. On the fourth day after their departure they were jammed between the ice, and obliged to continue in this manner five weeks and three days, before they could proceed on their voyage, at laſt they regained the coaſt of *Ochotzk*, between the river *Ola* and *Tauiſkoi Oſtrog*, where they ſtaid ſeveral days, and returned, about the middle of *July*, to *Ochotzk*. From this time there has been a continual navigation between *Ochotzk* and *Kamtſchatka*.

In 1718, the *Sin-bojarkoi Procofei Philkeew*, was ſent on the diſcovery of the *Schantarian* iſlands. This man was yet alive when I was at *Jakutzk*; he informed me that their number is not determined; that the largeſt is about twenty Werſts long from North to South, and from three to four Werſts broad, and that it is to be ſeen from the mouth of the river *Ud*.

In the beginning of 1719, the Czar ſent two navigators, *Iwan Jevreinow* and *Fedor Luſchin*, to *Kamtſchatka*, with inſtructions in his own hand writing, and at the ſame time an order to all the *Siberian* commanders, that they ſhould be aſſiſted in every thing they deſired. They arrived at *Jakutzk* in *May* 1720, went over to *Kamtſchatka* the ſame ſummer, and returned to *Jakutzk* in 1721, but kept their tranſactions ſecret; therefore we cannot know what they did, as we have no opportunity of conſulting their inſtructions. In the mean while, if we may judge from the conſequences, the aim of their expedition was limited merely to the *Kurilian* iſlands; and perhaps chiefly to that, from whence, according to report, the *Japaneſe* fetched ore. *Henry Buſh*, the *Dutch* ſailor, conducted them. The firſt ſummer he brought them from *Ochotzk* to *Bolſcheretzkoi Oſtrog*; and the following year they ſailed by the *Kurilian* iſlands. On coming to the fifth of them (which perhaps is the ſixth, as *Buſh* may have made a miſtake in the number) they came to an anchor: *Buſh* adviſed them to the contrary, as the ground was rocky; but was obliged to obey. They loſt four anchors while there, which were all they had, for the cables were torn to pieces by the ſtones and rocks; but thro' great good fortune they returned to *Kamtſchatka* without farther damage. Here they made wooden anchors, to which they faſtened great ſtones, and thus ſailed the next ſummer to *Ochotzk*. This account I had from *Henry Buſh*. *Jevreinow* left *Luſchin*, his companion, behind him in *Siberia*, and went to the Czar with an account of his voyage, and a map of the *Kurilian* iſlands, as far as he had diſcovered them, in the month of *May*, 1722.

# VOYAGES

FROM

# *ASIA* to *AMERICA.*

THE Czar, *Peter the Great*, being curious to know whether *Aſia* and *America* were contiguous to, or ſeparated from each other; and alſo to have the breadth of the channel aſcertained, by which they were ſeparated, in caſe a paſſage was found, wrote the following inſtructions with his own hand, and ordered his chief Admiral, Count *Fedor Matfewitſch Apraxin*, to ſee them carried into execution.

I. *One or two boats with decks to be built at* Kamtſchatka, *or at any other convenient place, with which*

II. *Enquiry ſhould be made in relation to the northerly coaſts, to ſee whether they were not contiguous with* America, *ſince their end was not known. And this done, they ſhould*

III. *See whether they could not ſomewhere find an harbour belonging to* Europeans, *or an* European *ſhip. They ſhould likewiſe ſet apart ſome men, who were to enquire after the name and ſituation of the coaſts diſcovered. Of all this an exact journal ſhould be kept, with which they ſhould return to* Peterſburg.

The Empreſs *Catharine*, who endeavoured in all points to execute moſt preciſely the plans of her deceaſed huſband, in the very beginning of her reign gave particular orders for the expedition to *Kamtſchatka.*

*Vitus Bering*, at that time, captain of a ſhip, was nominated commander of this expedition, having two lieutenants. *Martin Spangberg* and *Alexei Tſchirikow* for his aſſiſtants, together with other ſea-officers of inferior rank; they alſo had ſome along with them that underſtood

underſtood ſhip-building. They ſet out on the 5th of *February*, 1725, from *Petersburg*, and on the 16th of *March* arrived at *Tobolſk*, the chief town of *Siberia*, where they remained till the 16th of *May*, as well to wait for the convenience of a paſſage by water, as to take with them ſeveral mechanicks and materials, which were neceſſary for their intended voyage. The following ſummer was ſpent in navigating the rivers *Irtſch*, *Ob*, *Ket*, *Jeniſei*, *Tunguſka* and *Ilim*, after which they found themſelves under the neceſſity of wintering in the *Ilimſk*, and, in the mean while, took in proviſions for a longer voyage.

In the ſpring of 1726, they ſailed down the river *Lena* to *Jakutzk*; Lieut. *Spangberg* went immediately before them upon the rivers *Aldan*, *Maia*, and *Judoma*, with part of the proviſions, and heavy naval ſtores. He was followed by Capt. *Bering* by land, with another part of the proviſions that were packed upon horſes; while Lieut. *Tſchirikow* ſtaid at *Jakutzk*, in order to bring the reſt of the proviſions by land. This diviſion was neceſſary, on account of the toilſome way between *Jakutzk* and *Ochotzk*, it being not paſſable in ſummer with waggons, or in winter with ſledges, on account of the marſhes and rocky ground, and the country's being entirely uninhabited, except in the neighbourhood of *Jakutzk*.

Lieut. *Spangberg*'s voyage was as unfortunate as Capt. *Bering*'s was ſucceſsful, ſince he did not reach *Judomſkoi Kreſt*, the place to which he was bound, but was frozen up in the river *Judoma*, at the mouth of the little river *Gorbei*. He ſet out on the 4th of *November*, to proceed over land to *Judomſkoi Kreſt*, and *Ochotzk*, with the moſt neceſſary naval ſtores, but ſuffered ſo much with hunger by the way, that he was obliged to ſupport life by eating leather bags, ſtraps, and ſhoes; at length he arrived at *Ochotzk*, on the 1ſt of *January*, 1727. In the beginning of *February* he returned to the *Judoma* to fetch the reſt of his lading; but as his party was not ſufficient, another was diſpatched with horſes from *Ochotzk*, who aſſiſted in tranſporting every thing happily. On the 30th of *July*, Lieut. *Tſchirikow* arrived alſo from *Jakutzk* with the laſt proviſions.

In the mean while, a veſſel had been built at *Ochotzk*, named the *Fortuna*, which ſet ſail on the 30th of *June*, under the command of Lieut. *Spangberg*, to tranſport to *Bolſcheretzkoi* the moſt neceſſary naval ſtores, and ſome ſhip-carpenters. This ſhip returned, together with the old veſſel, which had remained there ever ſince the year 1716, when the navigation between *Ochotzk* and *Kamtſchatka* firſt began.

On

On the 21ſt of *Auguſt*, Capt. *Bering*, and Lieut. *Tſchirikow*, began their voyage; they entered the mouth of the river *Bolſchia* on the 2d of *September*, and went the following winter, together with Lieut. *Spangberg*, from *Bolſcheretzkoi* to *Niſchnei Kamſchatkoi Oſtrog*, whither the ſhip-carpenters had been ſent before them, in the ſummer, to fell wood for building of ſhips; they carried along with them as much proviſions, and naval ſtores, as they believed were neceſſary, with which they went on very ſlowly, on account of the tedious carriage with dogs. On the 4th of *Apail*, 1728, a boat was put upon the ſtocks, like the packet boats uſed in the *Baltick*, which was launched on the 10th of *July*, and named the *Gabriel*. This veſſel being provided with all neceſſary ſtores and proviſions for forty men, for a year's voyage, they immediately ſet out to execute the chief point they had in view.

For this end, Capt. *Bering* ſet ſail from the mouth of the river *Kamtſchatka*, on the 20th of *July*, in the year abovementioned, and ſteered North Eaſt, moſtly in ſight of the coaſt of *Kamtſcatka*; his chief endeavour was to deſcribe this coaſt as exactly as poſſible upon a map, in which he ſucceeded ſo well, that we have none better. On the 8th of *Auguſt*, being in the latitude of 64 d. 30 m. eight of the *Tſchuktſchi* came rowing from the ſhore in a leathern canoe, called a *Baidare*, formed of ſeal-ſkins, in order to inform themſelves about the intention of this voyage. Theſe people were converſed with by means of a *Korjak* interpreter, and invited to come on board the ſhip, upon which one of them, by means of two blown-up ſeal-ſkins tied to a pole, came ſwimming to the ſhip, and was followed by all in the canoe. The Captain obtained information from them, of the ſituation of the coaſt, and learned that they would find it turned towards the Weſt. Whether they made any enquiry about the oppoſite iſlands, or coaſts, is not mentioned in the Captain's account, of which this is an extract. One may, however, reaſonably believe they were not thought of, ſince our navigators had no knowledge at all of what had been done before them, and conſequently could not ſuppoſe the land ſo near. They heard of an iſland, which was ſaid to lie ſomewhat farther, at no great diſtance from the continent; to this they gave the name of St *Lawrence*, on account of its being the 10th of *Auguſt*, that ſaint's day, when they paſſed by it, without obſerving any thing upon it, beſides cottages of fiſhermen.

At laſt they perceived, on the 15th of *Auguſt*, in 67 deg. 18 min. North latitude, a promontory, behind which the coaſt extended towards the Weſt, as the former *Tſchuktſchi* had ſaid. From this the Captain

Captain drew a pretty plauſible concluſion, that now he had reached the extremity of *Aſia* towards the North Eaſt. He was of opinion that the coaſt muſt continually run from that Cape towards the Weſt; and if this was the caſe, no connection with *America* could take place; conſequently he believed that he had fulfilled his orders, and therefore propoſed to the officers and the reſt of the ſhip's company, " That it was time to think of their return. If they ſhould ſail far- " ther to the North, it was to be feared they might meet with ice, in " which they might be jammed, ſo as not eaſily to extricate them- " ſelves; the uſual thick fogs, in autumn, which already began to " appear, might deprive them of a free proſpect; and, in caſe contrary " winds ſhould ariſe, it would be almoſt impoſſible for them to return " to *Kamtſchatka* that ſummer, and yet it was not adviſeable to win- " ter in thoſe parts, ſince the well known want of wood in all the " northerly regions towards the frozen ſea, the ſavages of the country " not being yet reduced to the obedience of the *Ruſſian* government, " and the ſteep rocks, every where found along the ſhore, between " which there was neither anchorage nor harbour, rendered it too " dangerous.

It muſt be allowed that the circumſtances, on which the captain founded his judgment, were falſe; for it was afterwards found that this was the Promontory, which, by the inhabitants of *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, is called *Serdze Kamen*, on account of a rock upon it in the ſhape of a heart. And, although the country behind it winds to the Weſt, yet this winding compoſes only a large bay, in the innermoſt part of which the rock *Matkol* lies, according to the above account given by the Coſſack *Popow*. But here the coaſt begins again to run regularly to the North and North Eaſt, till in the 70th degree, or more, of North latitude, the proper *Tchuktſchian Noſs* appears as a great peninſula; where, and not before, it might be ſaid, that there was no connection between the two parts of the world, but who on board that ſhip could know this? For the particular and true knowledge of the country of the *Tſchuktſchi* is owing to my geographical reſearches made at *Jakutzk*, in the years 1736, 1737. It may ſuffice, that in the chief point there was no miſtake, and that *Aſia* is really ſeparated from *America* by a channel which connects the frozen ſea with the *Pacific* Ocean.

They returned without any thing remarkable happening, excepting that on the 20th of *Auguſt*, 40 of the *Tſchuktſchi* came rowing to the ſhip in four *Baidares*, and brought preſents, conſiſting of the fleſh of rein-

rein-deer, fiſh, freſh water, fox-ſkins, white foxes, and the teeth of ſea-horſes; for which they were rewarded with needles, ſteels for ſtriking fire, iron, *&c.* On the 29th they came to an anchor on the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka*, in foggy and ſtormy weather; and, as the cable was cut to pieces in attempting to weigh the anchor on the following morning, they were obliged to leave it behind them. They returned on the 20th of *September* to the river *Kamtſchatka*, went up it, and took their winter quarters again at *Niſchnei Kamtſchatkoi Oſtrog*.

Our ſea officers frequently heard relations from the inhabitants of *Kamtſchatka*, that were important enough to merit their obſervation, ſince, according to them, a country muſt be at no great diſtance towards the Eaſt, the diſcovery of which, and following its coaſts was their duty afterwards; they themſelves had not obſerved ſuch great and high waves, as, in other places, are common in the open ſea; they had ſeen fir-trees ſwimming in the ſea, tho' they do not grow in *Kamtſchatka*. Some even aſſured them, that they had ſeen this adjacent land, in clear weather, from the elevated coaſts of *Kamtſchatka*.

Now the captain, willing to be aſſured of the truth of this aſſertion, made preparations for another voyage, and diſpoſed things in ſuch a manner, that the return might not be by the way of *Kamtſchatka*, but immediately to *Ochotzk*; and, on the 5th of *June* 1729, he ſet ſail the ſecond time, but a violent wind did not ſuffer him to leave the coaſts at a greater diſtance than about 200 Werſts; and, meeting in that time with no land, he ſailed back, and ſteered around the South Promontory of *Kamtſchatka* *, the proper ſituation and form of which he deſcribed in his map, and returned by ſea to the mouth of the river *Bolſchaia*, whence he went to *Ochotzk* on the 23d of *July*.

Hence he travelled on the 29th of the ſame month to *Judomſkoi Kreſt*, there he found ſome ſmall veſſels, built floats, and with them went down the rivers *Judoma*, *Maia*, and *Aldan*. At *Belſkoi Perewoſs*, which is a paſſage over the *Aldan*, at the river *Bela*, he took horſes from the neighbouring *Jakutes*; and with them proceeded to *Jakutzk*, where he arrived, on the 29th of *Auguſt*; he ſet out from thence again on the 10th of *September*, in order to go up the *Lena* by water as far as poſſible. The violent driving of the ice obliged him to ſtop on the 10th of *October*, at *Peleduiſkaia Stoboda*, but this laſted no longer than till the 29th of the ſame month, when he proceeded on his

* This is called by ſome *Cape Oſkoi*; perhaps *Oſkoi* has its origin from the *Ruſſian* word for Southerly.

journey with ſledges. He took his way by *Ilimſk*, *Jeniſeiſk*, *Tomſk*, and *Tara*, to *Tobolk*, where he ſtaid from the 10th to the 25th of *January*, and returned on the 1ſt of *March* 1730, to *Peterſbourg*.

A miſtake had a little before ſlipt into the Geography of theſe countries, deſcribing *Kamtſchatka* to be the ſame with the land of *Jeſo*, and conſequently to extend towards the South, as far as the neighbourhood of *Japan*.

Two maps publiſhed ſoon after the death of *Peter the Great* (*a*) had occaſioned this. They were confided in, as founded on the neweſt diſcoveries, and what helped to confirm this miſtake was ſome remarks made by the *Swediſh* officers, who had been priſoners in *Siberia*, and which were annexed to the hiſtory of *Tartary*, written by *Abulgaſi Bayadur Chan* (*b*). Therefore this hypotheſis was alſo adopted by *Scheuchzer*, on his publiſhing *Kaempfer*'s hiſtory of *Japan* (*c*). M. *Strahlenberg* ſeemed to give it new weight by his teſtimony (*d*). M. *de Martiniere* (*e*) followed him in this miſtake, as well as M. *Bellin* (*f*), who added another new miſtake, as if there was a free navigation from the mouth of the river *Lena* to *Kamtſchatka*, by means of which a trade was carried on to this country. Tho' this was not ſo much owing to M. *Bellin*, as to the author of the remarks on *Abulgaſi*, who firſt mentioned it (*g*).

M. *Bering*, who had ſailed about the South point of *Kamtſchatka*, in the 51ſt degree of North latitude, rectifies their miſtakes, and his map was ſent to *Paris*, and incorporated with *Du Halde*'s, or rather *D'Anville*'s Atlas. Father *Caſtel* (*h*) hence took an opportunity to refute M. *Bellin*, and the latter defended the miſtake (*i*), thinking that M. *D'Anville* had been miſtaken, and had not ſufficient authority for alledging M. *Bering* to be the author of the map inſerted in

(*a*) A new map of the whole Empire of *Great Ruſſia*, in the condition in which it was found on the death of *Peter the Great*; and *Aſiatic Ruſſia*, drawn from the map publiſhed by order of the late Czar. There is alſo a map by *Homan*, engraved according to theſe.

(*b*) A genealogical hiſtory of the *Tartars*, pag. 109.

(*c*) Hiſtory of *Japan* by M. *Kaempfer*, Vol. I. Preliminary diſcourſes, page 17, and the eight plate belonging to it.

(*d*) The North and Eaſt parts of *Europe* and *Aſia*, Introduction, page 31, and the map belonging to it.

(*e*) Geographical dictionary, Vol V. under the word *Kamtſchatka*.

(*f*) Hiſtory of *Japan* by Father *Charlevoix*, Vol. II. page 493, and the map to which he refers.

(*g*) L. c. page 108.

(*h*) Diſſertation on the celebrated land of *Kamtſchatka*, in the Memoirs of *Trevoux* for *July* 1737, page 1156, and following.

(*i*) Memoirs of *Trevoux* for *Auguſt* 1737, page 2389, and following.

*Du Halde*'s

*Du Halde*'s Atlas, yet nothing is more certain than that M. *Bering* delineated that map himſelf. M. *Iwan Kirilow* the chief ſecretary of the directing ſenate, and afterwards counſellor of ſtate, had inſerted the moſt eſſential part of it, in his general map of *Ruſſia*, before *Du Halde*'s work was publiſhed; for his map was already finiſhed in 1732, and publiſhed in 1734, therefore M. *D'Anville* could not be miſtaken. M. *Bellin* ſhould have read what Father *Du Halde* (*k*) himſelf ſays of the means by which he came by this map, and it would have eaſily convinced him of the contrary.

At the time Capt. *Bering* was on his laſt voyage from the river *Kamtſchatka* towards the Eaſt, another *Japaneſe* veſſel was driven on the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka*, where it ſtranded in *July* 1729, to the Southward of the bay of *Awatſcha*. *Andreas Schtinnikow*, a chief of 50 *Coſſacs*, came thither with ſome *Kamtſchedales*, juſt as the *Japaneſe* had brought their goods aſhore from the ſhip. *Schtinnikow* received ſome preſents from them, but this did not ſatisfy him; for, after ſpending two days among the *Japaneſe*, he left them in the night time, and concealed himſelf with his company in the neighbourhood, in order to ſee how they would proceed. The *Japaneſe* afflicted at *Schtinnikow*'s departure, wanted to find out ſome other inhabitants, for which purpoſe they took a boat, and ſteered along the coaſt; upon which *Schtinnikow* ordered the *Kamtſchedales* to follow them, and to ſhoot them all except two, which they accordingly did, ſo that out of 17 *Japaneſe* there remained alive only an old man, and a boy of 11 years old. *Schtinnikow*, having taken poſſeſſion of all their effects, cauſed their ſhip to be broke to pieces, in order to make uſe of the iron, and conducted the two *Japaneſe* as priſoners of war, or rather as ſlaves to *Werchnei Kamtſchatſkoi Oſtrog*. This barbarity ſhewn to ſhipwreck'd ſtrangers did not remain unpuniſhed, for *Schtinnikow* having taken his tryal, received the halter for his reward, but the *Japaneſe* were ſent to *Jakutzk* in 1731, and from thence to *Toboſk*, after which, in 1732, they were brought to *Peterſbourg*.

Having been there inſtructed in the *Ruſſian* language, and the principles of the chriſtian religion, they became chriſtians: the firſt was baptized by the name of *Caſmas*, and the ſecond by that of *Damian*, for they were before called *Soſa* and *Gonſa*; they were then ſent, by order of the directing ſenate, to the academy of ſciences; where they were employed in inſtructing the *Ruſſians* in their language, ſome of whom were able to read and write tolerable good *Japaneſe*, at the

(*k*) Deſcription of *China*. Vol. IV. page 561

time theſe ſtrangers died, which happened in the years 1736 and 1739. They called the town of their nativity *Satzma*, *Kaempfer* writes this name *Satzuma*, and on the maps, it is called *Saxuma*, according to the *Portugueſe* pronunciation. It is a town and province ſituate on the South Weſt of the iſland of *Ximo*, otherwiſe called *Kiuſiu*. *Soſa* had been a merchant; but the father of *Gonſa* had been a pilot on board the *Japaneſe* fleet, and the ſon choſe the ſame way of life. Their veſſel which they called *Wakaſchimar*, was freighted with cotton and ſilk ſtuffs, rice, and paper. As they were deſtined for *Oſacka*, the commander of the town of *Satzma*, named *Inatzdare Oſina Nokam*, had freighted them with the rice and paper, the firſt of which was to ſerve for the food of the inhabitants, no rice growing at *Oſacka*, and the ſecond was for the uſe of the public offices, but they had been diſtreſſed by ſtorms, and driven about on the ſea for ſix months, till at laſt they were ſtranded on *Kamtſchatka*, on the 8th of *July*. They called the capital of their empire *Kio*; it is ſituated on the river *Jedogaw*, which is there about a werſt broad, and falls into the ſea at a ſmall diſtance from the town. The king of *Japan* they called *Oſama*, and gave more accounts of the ſame nature, but the inſerting them here would be foreign to our purpoſe.

*Aſanaſſei Schoſtakows*, the chief of the *Jakutzk Coſſacks*, preſented ſeveral propoſals to the ſenate for rendering the obſtinate *Tſchuktſchi* tributary, as alſo the *Korjaks*, who inhabited as well the *Siberian* coaſt of the *Penſchinſkin* gulf, as both coaſts of the North parts of *Kamtſchatka*, and had often revolted. He was deſirous of diſcovering the country oppoſite *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs*, and of reducing its inhabitants under the ſubjection of *Ruſſia:* He likewiſe propoſed to make another attempt to diſcover the pretended country in the frozen ſea, and finally he compriſed the *Schantarian* and *Kurilian* iſlands in the enquiries he was to make. He brought his propoſals on the carpet with ſo much eloquence, and ſo clearly demonſtrated to perſons of all ranks the benefit likely to be derived from them, that they met with an univerſal approbation, and in purſuance thereof, he was appointed the chief of a particular expedition, in which he was to attempt the execution of all he had promiſed. The admiralty office at *Peterſburg* appointed one *Jacob Hens* to be his pilot; *Iwan Fedorow* to be his ſecond mate; *Michael Gwoſdew* for his geodeſiſt, or navigator; *Herdebol* for a ſearcher of ore, and likewiſe granted him ten ſailors. He was to be provided with ſmall cannon and mortars, with all their appurtenances,

at

at *Catherineburg**, and *Dmitri Pawlutzki*, a captain of the *Siberian* regiment of dragoons, was ordered to join him at *Tobolſk*, and theſe two had the joint command of 400 *Coſſacks*; moreover all the *Coſſacs* who were garriſon'd in the *Oſtroges* and *Simowies* within the *Tſchukutſch* juriſdiction, received injunctions to obey their orders wherever they ſhould come.

*Scheſtakow* returned with theſe diſpatches from *Peterſbourg* to *Siberia* in the month of *June* 1727. He tarried at *Tobolſk* till the 28th of *November*, ſpent the winter in the upper huts on the *Lena*, and arrived at *Jakutzk* in the ſummer 1728. Here a great diſpute aroſe between *Scheſtakow* and *Pawlutzki*, which probably occaſioned their ſeparation, though both had the ſame deſign in their intended enterprizes. *Scheſtakow* went in 1729 to *Ochotzk*, where he took poſſeſſion of the veſſels which Capt. *Bering* had lately brought back with him from *Kamtſchatka*; and on the firſt of *September* diſpatched his couſin *Simbojarſki Iwan Scheſtakow*, in the boat *Gabriel*, to the river *Ud*, from whence he was to proceed to *Kamtſchatka*, and enquire into the ſituation, and alſo make a map of the iſlands lying within this navigation; he himſelf ſet out with the other veſſel called the *Fortuna*, for *Tauiſkoi Oſtrog*, but had the misfortune to ſuffer ſhipwreck on his way, and to ſee the greateſt part of the men he had with him periſh, whilſt only he and four others narrowly eſcaped in a canoe. On the 30th of *September* he ordered *Iwan Oſtaſiew*, a *Coſſack*, with ſome *Korjack* elders, to go before him along the coaſt, from *Tauiſkoi Oſtrog* to the river *Penſchina*, and to endeavour, by perſuaſions and

* *Catherineburg*. A new city, begun in the year 1721, in the government of *Siberia*, in the province of *Ugor*, on the river *Iſett*, between the *Uralcian* mountains, and had this name given it in honour to the late Empreſs *Catharine*. This place is five hundred and fifty Werſts from the city of *Tobolſki*. The fortification is ſquare, and has ſix whole and four half baſtions: The river *Iſett* runs through it, along which is a great dam made, and near it the following works and manufactures are ſet on foot: (1) Two high maſt-ovens: (2) Four mills with hammers for drawing iron-bars: (3) Three mills with hammers for flatting plate iron: (4) Two fabricks for making of plates for tin, with a ſtone building where the plates are tinn'd: (5) A fabrick for working rough ſteel, containing two ſmall hammer works, and eight forges: (6) A ſteel fabrick with two hammer works: (7) A wire fabrick: (8) Two machines for making iron hoops: (9) A machine for cutting iron into ſmall bars for courſe wire and nails: (10) A mill for hammering of anchors: (11) Two machines for making ſword-blades: (12) A machine for boring and poliſhing cannon: (13) Six furnaces to melt copper: (14) A ſaw-mill with three frames; all theſe works are kept going by forty-two water wheels. The directors of theſe ſeveral works are moſtly *Germans*, each of whom has a houſe to himſelf, all built in a regular and uniform manner; they have, beſides the *Ruſſian*, a church of their own, and a *German* miniſter, who alſo teaches their children reading, writing, and the languages.

fair,

fair promiſes, to bring into obedience the obſtinate *Korjacks* dwelling in the places he ſhould go through. He himſelf followed in the beginning of *December* with the reſt of his people, overtook *Oſtafiew* on the road, and arrived fortunately within two days journey from the river *Penſchina*, where he met an innumerable ſwarm of *Tſchuktſchi*, who were on their march to make war againſt the *Korjacks* elders. So inconſiderable were *Scheſtakow*'s company of *Ruſſians*, added to the *Ochotzk Tunguſes* †, *Lamutes*, and *Korjaks* he had with him, that they amounted in all to no more than 150 men; this did not prevent him from venturing an engagement with the *Tſchuktſchi*, the event of which was fatal to him, for he was mortally wounded by an arrow, his party defeated, and ſuch of his men who eſcaped with their lives were entirely diſperſed. This happened on the 14th of *March* 1730, near the brook of *Jegatſch*, which falls into the *Penſchinſkin* gulph, between the rivers *Paren* and *Penſchina*.

Three days before this unhappy accident, *Scheſtakow* had ſent orders to *Tauiſkoi Oſtrog*, that *Tryphon Krupiſchew*, the *Coſſac*, ſhould go to *Bolſcheretſkoi Oſtrog*, in a veſſel properly fitted for the ſea, from thence

† *Tunguſi.* This is the moſt numerous and moſt ſtraggling Pagan nation (with reſpect to their dwellings) that is in *Siberia*, and are ſuppoſed to amount to 70 or 80000 men. Theſe people are, in general, diſtinguiſhed by three names, viz. *Konni Tunguſi*, *Oleni Tunguſi*, and *Sabatſchi Tunguſi*, that is, thoſe that make uſe of horſes for riding and draught, thoſe who uſe rein-deer for that purpoſe, and thoſe who uſe dogs. In the ſame manner as the *Finlandians* have been diſtinguiſhed formerly, by ſome writers, into *Skrete* and *Rede*; *i. e.* into ſkating *Finlandians*, and ſuch as uſed ſledges. The *Ruſſians* in *Siberia* give, beſides, to the latter ſort of theſe *Tunguſi* divers other names, as *Podkumena*, *Tumaki*, and *Wonki Tunguſi*, &c. becauſe the latter have very diſagreeable ſmells, occaſioned by the fiſh, and other uncommon things they feed upon; and the former live in and about the mountains: In other things they are no way different from the *Sabatſchi Tunguſi*. The *Jakuhti* call them *Udſchiceen*, from the word *Ud*, ſignifying a *dog*: Whence alſo a capital river, which diſcharges itſelf into the Bay of *Lama*, on account of theſe people, who keep dogs, that have hair one fourth of an ell long, is named *Ud-Reka*, *i. e.* the *river of Dogs*. Moreover, theſe *Sabatſchi Tunguſi* living partly at the point of the bay of *Penſchin* or *Lama*, and partly near the rivers *Aldan*, *Tungur*, and *Ud*, the *Ruſſians* have given that point the name of *Sabatſchi Noſs*. The *Sabatſchi Tunguſi* are ſubdivided among themſelves into divers tribes, viz. 1. *Lamunka*. 2. *Kaelaka*, which is the largeſt and ſtrongeſt. 3. *Lakigir*. 4. *Brangatkal*. 5. *Ninengath*. 6. *Bugagi*. 7. *Maimogur*. 8. *Boldati*. 9. *Sologan*. 10. *Mamsur*. 11. *Ilagin*. 12. *Kotnachan*; and, 13. *Jukagri* or *Jukairi*. As to the two other ſorts, *viz* the *Kouni* and *Oeeni Tunguſi*, they are ſufficiently deſcribed in the travels of *Iſbrand Ides*, and in thoſe of *Adam Brant*, where it is obſervable that both theſe writers are of opinion, that the *Konni Tunguſi*, as well as the *Targuzini*, came originally from *Dauria*, and that the *Oleni-Tunguſi*, who live near the river *Angara*, are all one people with the *Konni*, though their tongues are different; and the account of the above authors, with my table, taken together, will pretty well clear up what I have ſaid concerning this nation. That their anceſtors were thoſe primitive *Tartars* who are called in ancient *European* authors by the name of *Abii*.

double

double the ſouthern headland of *Kamtſchatka*, make the harbour of *Niſchnei Kamtſchatzkoi Oſtrog*, and proceed to the river *Anadir*, in order to invite the inhabitants of the large country oppoſite to it to pay tribute to *Ruſſia*. He moreover deſired, that if *Gwoſdew*, the navigator, choſe to go in this expedition, he ſhould take him on board the veſſel and ſhew him reſpect. There are no accounts that mention the conſequences of theſe orders; we only know that, in the year 1730, *Gwoſdew*, the navigator, was actually in between 65 and 66 degrees of North latitude, on a ſtrange coaſt, ſituate at a ſmall diſtance, oppoſite to the country of the *Tſchuktſchi*, and that he found people there, but could not ſpeak with them for want of an interpreter.

In the mean while, *Iwan Scheſtakow*, the *Sinbojarſkoi*, had ſailed to *Kamtſchatka* in the boat *Gabriel*, and arrived at *Bolſcheretſkoi* the 19th of *September*. For, though he had been enjoined to go firſt to the river *Ud*, yet he could not execute theſe orders on account of a ſtrong contrary wind. The following ſummer he made the voyage to the river *Ud*, and arrived at *Udſkoi Oſtrog*, where he found people, who had been ſent thither by the chief *Scheſtakow*, and had built a very indifferent veſſel; he ſailed back to *Kamtſchatka*, and both going and coming back ſaw ſeveral iſlands, and at laſt returned to *Ochotzk*. I regret that I am not able to mention the particular circumſtances of this voyage, as no journal was kept at ſea. However, in an account, which, on the 23d of *October* 1730, was delivered to the *Jakutzk* company by the *Sinbojarſkoi Iwan Schestakow*, the days are noted on which every thing was done; theſe we will add as a proof.

*June* 16, 1730, departure from *Bolſchaia reka*.
*July* 16, —— arrival at the river *Ud*.
19, ——— arrival at *Udſkoi Ostrog*.
28, ——— departure from thence.
*Aug.* 13, ——— arrival at *Bolſchaia reka*.
20, ———departure from thence.
*Sept.* 5, ——— arrival at *Ochotzk*.

Captain *Pawlutzki* had, in the mean while, advanced from *Jakutzk* by the uſual road over land to *Niſchnee Kolymſkoe Simowie*, or *Oſtrog*; and, although advice had been there received, by the way of *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, of the death of *Scheſtakow*, chief of the *Coſſacks*, yet he was determined that ſhould occaſion no impediment to the expedition, and immediately ſent orders to the pilot *Jacob Hens* to take one of the veſſels left by Capt. *Bering* at *Ochotzk*, and come round *Kamtſchatka* to *Anadirſk*, for which place he himſelf intended ſhortly to depart

depart, &c. *Jacob Hens* received these orders at the time *Iwan Schestakow* had returned to *Ochotzk*.

In consequence of this order, *Hens* took the boat *Gabriel*, and sailed to *Kamtschatka*, at the mouth of which river he arrived on the 20th of *July* 1731; but on his voyage to the river *Anadir*, he there received intelligence, that on the same day a rebellious band of *Kamtschedales* had come to *Nischnei Kamtschatzkoi Ostrog*, and having killed most of the *Russians* there, set fire to the houses of the inhabitants. The remaining few *Russians* took shelter in the vessel, and *Hens* immediately sent some men to reduce the *Kamtschedales* to obedience, which they effected. But this insurrection put a stop to the intended navigation to the river *Anadir*.

In the mean while, Captain *Pawlutzki* arrived, on the 3d of *September*, 1730, at *Anadirskoi Ostrog*; from whence he made, in the following summer, a campaign against the obstinate *Tschuktschi*, I have collected, not only written, but likewise verbal relations of it, from persons who were present on the spot, which are remarkable on account of several circumstances, and more especially because they explain the geography of these parts.

The 12th of *March* 1731, *Pawlutzki* marched with 215 *Russians*, 160 *Korjacks*, and 60 *Jukagiri*, against the rebellious *Tschuktschi*. The rout was taken by the sources of the rivers *Uboina*, *Bela*, and *Tscherna*, which fall into the *Anadir*, and then they turned off directly northward to the Frozen Sea, leaving the source of the river *Anadir* on the left of their way. It is not known that they passed any other rivers, since nobody could indicate or name them. After two months, marching hardly more than ten werfts a day, and resting now and then, *Pawlutzki* arrived at the Frozen Sea, at a place where a considerable river falls into it, but none of the company knew the name thereof. He travelled for a fortnight together towards the East, along the coasts, mostly upon the ice, without observing the mouths of any rivers, because of his going frequently at too great a distance from the land. At last they observed a great company of *Tschuktschi* advancing, who seemed prepared for an engagement. *Pawlutzki*, by his interpreters, summoned them to obedience; and, on their refusal, immediately attacked them, and had the good fortune to beat them entirely from the field of battle, on the 7th day of *June*.

After halting 8 days, *Pawlutzki* proceeded on his march, and arrived towards the end of *June* at two rivers, which emptied themselves into the

the Frozen Sea, at about a day's journey diſtance from each other. On the latter of theſe rivers a ſecond engagement happened on *June* 30, the event of which was as fortunate as that of the former.

They halted there three days, and then advanced towards the *Tſchukotzkoi Noſs*, intending to croſs it in their way to the *Anadirſk* ſea, when they met another army of *Tſchuktſchi*, who had aſſembled from both ſeas. Here enſued the third engagement, on the 14th of *July*, in which the loſs on the ſide of the enemies was greater than the advantage on the ſide of the *Ruſſians*; for the *Tſchuktſchi* would neither ſubmit, nor agree to pay tribute; among the ſpoils, ſome things were found belonging to *Scheſtakow*, the chief of the *Coſſacks*, who had been killed in an engagement near the brook *Jegatſch*, as was mentioned before. We are likewiſe aſſured, that among thoſe of the enemy ſlain in the engagement, there was found one who had two holes in the upper lip on each ſide of the mouth, through which pieces of ſea-horſe-teeth were put. There were no more than three *Ruſſians*, one *Jukagir*, and five *Korjacks* killed in the three engagements.

*Pawlutzki* proceeded from thence to the *Tſchukotzkoi Noſs*; he had ſeveral high mountains to climb, which detained him ten days on the road, before he regained the coaſt. He there embarked part of his people on board *baidares*, with orders to keep near the ſhore, whilſt he himſelf, with the greateſt part of his men, continued his rout by land, following the coaſt, which there extends itſelf towards the South-Eaſt, ſo that every evening he received intelligence from the *baidares*. They came on the ſeventh day to the mouth of a river, and twelve days after to the mouth of another; from which, at the diſtance of about ten werſts, there runs into the ſea, far towards the Eaſt, a point of land, which at firſt is mountainous, but ends in a plain, whoſe extent could not be ſeen. Probably, this is the point of land that cauſed Captain *Bering* to return. Among the mountains upon it, there is one which by the inhabitants of *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog* is called *Serdze Kamen*. From hence *Pawlutzki* took his rout through the inland country, and arrived at *Anadirſk* on the 21ſt of *October*.

I omit the reſt of the exploits of this brave man (who afterwards was made a Major, then Lieutenant-Colonel, and at laſt died a Waywode at *Jakutzk*) and proceed to the ſecond expedition of *Kamtſchatka*, which, as it ſurpaſſes all thoſe before made, deſerves a more circumſtantial deſcription.

Captain *Bering* himſelf made the propoſals for it, and he, as well as the two lieutenants, *Spangberg* and *Tſchirikow*, declared that they

would travel a second time to *Kamtschatka*, and undertake the discoveries that remained to be made in those seas. For this purpose the captain was made a commodore, and both lieutenants were raised to be captains, in the beginning of the year 1732. The design of the first voyage was not brought on the carpet again upon this occasion, since it was looked upon as compleated; but, instead of that, orders were given to make voyages as well eastward to the continent of *America*, as southward to *Japan*, and to discover, if possible, at the same time, the north passage through the Frozen Sea, which had been so frequently attempted by the *English* and *Dutch*. The Senate, the Admiralty-office, and the Academy of Sciences, all united to compleat this important undertaking, and M. *Kirilow*, the Upper Secretary in the Senate, afterwards Counsellor of State, pushed the affair so warmly, that it was soon brought to bear.

The first imperial order from the cabinet to the senate with regard thereto, was of the 17th of *April* 1732. The senate desired the academy of sciences to communicate to them all the intelligence which they had received, to that time, of *Kamtschatka*, and its neighbouring countries, rivers, and seas. With this M. *de Lisle* was charged by the academy, and accordingly made a map, upon which *Kamtschatka*, the land of *Jesso*, (agreeable to the description of the ship *Castricom*) *Staten Island*, the Company's Island, *Japan*, and the coast that had been seen by a *Spanish* captain, named Don *Juan de Gama*, were represented. To this map was added an account in writing, in which M. *de Lisle* described the old discoveries, and proposed ways and means of making new ones. It was therefore a fault in his memory, to say, after his return to *Paris*, in a memoir which he delivered to the academy of sciences at *Paris*, that the said map, and account, had been made by him in the year 1731, and that a new *Kamtschatkan* expedition had been made by it.

When the map, and the account belonging to it, had been delivered to the senate, by the academy of sciences, there followed an order, that a professor of the academy should be nominated to accompany Capt. *Bering* in his voyage, who was to ascertain, by astronomical observations, the proper situation of the countries that might be discovered, and to notice whatever occurred with respect to animals, plants, and minerals, belonging to natural history. It happened fortunately for the sciences, that two professors of the academy, *viz. John George Gmelin*, professor of chemistry and natural history, and *Lewis de Lisle de la Croyere*, professor of astronomy, voluntarily offered

offered to make the voyage, and, upon the academy's propoſal, were nominated by the ſenate. In the beginning of the year 1733, I undertook to write the civil hiſtory of *Siberia*, and its antiquities, with the manners and cuſtoms of the people, as alſo the occurrences of the voyage, which was likewiſe approved of by the ſenate. It may be ſaid with truth, that ſo tedious and long a voyage was never undertaken with more alacrity than this was, by all who had a ſhare in it.

As ſeveral voyages were propoſed to be made, the admiralty ordered the following ſea-officers to join the commodore, as lieutenants: *Peter Laſſenius*, *William Walton*, *Dmitri Laptiew*, *Jegor Jendauro*, *Dmitri Owzin*, *Swen Waxel*, *Waſili Prontſchiſchtſchew*, *Michailo Plautin*, and *Alexander Scheltinga*, midſhipmen. Three of theſe were deſigned for the diſcovery of the North Paſſage, one was to go from the *Ob* to the *Jeniſei* *; another to ſail out of the *Lena*, towards the Weſt, and likewiſe go into the *Jeniſei*; and the third was to ſail out of the *Lena* towards the Eaſt, round *Tſchukotzkoi Noſs*, and endeavour to reach *Kamtſchatka*. The paſſage from *Archangel* to the *Ob*, the admiralty reſerved for their own immediate inſpection; for which three lieutenants, *Murawiew*, *Malagin*, and *Skuratow*, were employed. The reſt of the ſea-officers were ſtationed aboard the ſhips that were to be commanded by the Commodore, and

* *Jeniſei*, or *Jenzea*. This is one of the largeſt rivers that runs through *Tartary* and *Siberia*; it extends itſelf, from its ſource to its mouth, one thouſand ſix hundred *Engliſh* miles in length. I could never learn the ſignification of the name of this great river, the word being neither *Sclavonian* nor *Ruſſian*; nor do the *Tartars*, who live on the banks of it, near its ſource, give it the name of *Jeneſei*, but call it *Kemm*. However, the word *Jeniſei* ſignifying, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkiſh* tongues, *to ſwell*, or *to over-flow*, and this river overflowing the land every ſpring, towards its mouth, on both ſides, for ſeveral miles, it is not unlikely that it had the name *Jeniſei* from thence: For *Sai*, or *Sei*, ſignifies *Rocky river*, where there are water-falls, and having a rapid current; and *Jenie* denotes ſpreading, ſwelling, *e. g.* the rivers *Jaxartes* and *Chaſeldaria*, are alſo called, near their ſources, or *Dſai Dſeibun*: Now the river *Jeniſei*, near its ſprings, between the town of *Abakan* and the river *Kemtſchyk*, is not only ſtony and rocky, but has above ten *Petroggs*, or cataracts; as it has likewiſe between the cities of *Croſnayahr* and *Jeniſei*, not far from *Kemſkroi Oſtrog*. Whence it comes, that this river, from the town of *Abakan*, towards its ſource into *Mungalia*, is not navigable, which otherwiſe would much ſhorten and facilitate the way, through *Mungalia* into *China*, and render that trade much more eaſy, as well as profitable. This river, on account of its ſtony bottom, yields no fiſh, till below the city of *Jeniſei*, and after it has received the rivers *Angara* and *Tungus*, which cauſes annually a great number of veſſels from this city, and others, to go down ſo far as *Nova Mungaſcia*, in order to catch and ſalt fiſh. At this city, the river is one werſt, or one thouſand five hundred paces over; from which the reader may judge of its vaſt breadth downwards, near the ſea, after it has ſwallowed up ſo many large rivers.

the Captains *Spangberg* and *Tſchirikow*. One was alſo intended to navigate a particular ſhip, becauſe it was ordered that four ſhips ſhould put out to ſea from *Kamtſchatka*.

On the 21ſt of *February* 1733, Captain *Spangberg* was ſent before, with a party, and the heavieſt materials. The commodore ſet out from *Petersburg* on the 18th of *April*, and went from *Twer* as far as *Caſan* by water, and afterwards by *Catherineburg* to *Tobolsk*. The ſame rout was taken by our academical travellers, who began their journey on the 8th of *Auguſt* in the ſame year, and in *January* 1734 overtook the Commodore at *Tobolsk*. The Commodore travelled from thence by the way of *Tara*, *Tomsk*, and *Kraſnojarsk*, to *Irkutzk*, from whence he went to the *Lena*, and took advantage of the water-carriage as far as *Jakutzk*. On the other hand, Captain *Tſchirikow* went in the ſummer 1734 from *Tobolſk*, upon the rivers *Irtiſch*, *Ob*, *Ret*, *Tunguska*, and *Ilim*, as far as *Ilimsk*, and only reached *Jakutzk* the following year.

While the ſhip-building at *Ochotzk* went on, our academical fellow travellers made ſeveral tours, that have been of no ſmall advantage to geography and natural hiſtory. Profeſſor *de la Croyere* travelled with captain *Tſchirikow* by water, left him at the mouth of the river *Ilim*, from whence he went to *Jakutzk*, and paſſed the lake *Baical*, to *Selenginsk*, *Nertchinsk*, and the river *Argun*; but Profeſſor *Gmelin* and myſelf went up the *Irtiſch*, as far as *Uſt-Kamenogorſkaia Krepoſt*; we proceeded by *Koliwano-Woskreſenskoi*, *Sawod*, *Kuſnetzk*, and *Tomsk*, to *Jeniſeisk*; and from thence to the parts ſituated beyond the lake *Baical*, in which latter voyage we ſpent the ſummer of the year 1735. We aſſembled again in the ſpring of 1736, in the upper parts of the river *Lena*. *De la Croyere* went to *Jakutzk*, without ſtaying by the way. *Gmelin* and I ſpent the whole ſummer again in this navigation, in order to gain the more time for our obſervations.

The commodore was ſtill at *Jakutzk*, and took care to tranſport proviſions from thence to *Ochotzk*. Captain *Spangberg* ſtaid with the ſhip-builders at *Ochotzk*; but neither of them had any great ſucceſs in what they undertook, for every thing went on ſo ſlowly, that it was impoſſible to determine when the voyage to *Kamtſchatka* would take place. In the mean while we were not idle, but intent on new travels in order to employ ourſelves. A fire at *Jakutzk* deprived Profeſſor *Gmelin* of all his itinerary obſervations, among which, thoſe he made laſt ſummer are particularly to be regretted, (for copies of the former

former had been before tranſmitted to *Peterſburgh* ;) this loſs was the occaſion of his going again in the ſummer 1737, up the *Lena*. But *De la Croyere* made a voyage down the *Lena* to *Schigani Siktak*, and the river *Olenek*. I was obliged, on account of my ill ſtate of health, to accompany M. *Gmelin*, in order to receive, occaſionally, the benefit of his aſſiſtance and advice. This ſickneſs was the reaſon of my not returning afterwards to *Jakutzk*, for on that account there came an order from the ſenate, which releaſed me from proceeding on the voyage to *Kamtſchatka*, and inſtead of that gave me a commiſſion to travel through thoſe parts of *Siberia* where I had not yet been, in order to give a more circumſtantial deſcription of all that country. *Gmelin* petitioned likewiſe to be recalled, which was granted him. When we were at *Jakutzk* we had ſent before us to *Kamtſchatka* one *Stephen Kraſcheninikow*, a ſtudent, in order to make the neceſſary preparations there before our arrival. In the year 1738, the *Adjunctus*, *George Wilhelm Steller*, whom the academy of ſciences had ſent to aſſiſt profeſſor *Gmelin*, joined us. By him was compleated what was to be done at *Kamtſchatka* in regard to the ſciences.

During the time preparations were making for the chief buſineſs, ſeveral voyages were made along the coaſts of the frozen ſea, to diſcover whether a paſſage might not be found that way to *Kamtſchatka*. Lieutenant *Murawiew* was firſt ordered on a voyage from *Archangel* to the *Ob*. He got no farther the firſt ſummer, 1734, than the river *Petſchera*, and wintered at *Puſtoſerſkoi Oſtrog*. The following ſummer he ſailed through the ſtreights of *Weygat*, leaving the iſland of *Weygat* on the left. This paſſage is called *Iugorſkoi Schar* by the *Ruſſian* promyſchleni, who go from *Nova Zembla* to catch ſea-horſes, ſeals, ſtone-foxes, and white bears. The other paſſage between the iſland of *Weygat* and *Nova Zembla* was not enquired into. From thence he came again into an open ſea, known by the name of *Karſkoe More*, and is ſo called from the river *Kara*, which falls into a bay ſituate in this ſea.

Thus far this navigation has been known ever ſince the beginning of the laſt century. The inhabitants of *Archangel*, *Kolmagori*, *Meſen*, *Puſtoſerſkoi Oſtrog*, ſail almoſt annually to *Nova Zembla* to catch ſea-horſes, ſeals, and white bears. There have formerly been voyages made this way by ſea to *Siberia*, I mean to the river *Ob*, and to *Mangaſea*, which were performed in the following manner: They ſailed up the river *Mutnaja*, which falls into the ſame bay as the *Kara*, and

in

in eight days entered a lake from which that river has its ſource; this lake they croſſed over in one day, and came to a carrying place of about 200 fathoms, or, according to other accounts, three werſts. They then entered another lake, out of which a river, known by the name *Selenaia*, or, according to the *Ruſſian* atlas, *Tylowka*, runs towards the Bay of the river *Ob*. They were obliged to unload their veſſels for the eaſier carriage (between the two lakes) both of their goods and ſmall veſſels, or cajucks, uſed in this navigation: Now as this required a great deal of labour, ſeveral of theſe veſſels generally went in company together that they might mutually aſſiſt each other. Being once in the *Selenaia*, they went down with the current, but on account of the many ſhallows, almoſt ten days were uſually ſpent in reaching the bay of the river *Ob*. Then ſome went to *Obdorſkoi Gorodock*, in order to trade with the *Samojades*; but moſt of them turned into the gulf of the river *Tap*, and thus arrived at the place where formerly ſtood the town of *Mangaſea*.

Lieut. *Murawiew* ſailed along the ſaid cape in 1735, as far as 72 deg. 30 min. North lat. The Lieutenants *Mlyagin* and *Skuratow* went on with this navigation, and doubling the Cape *Jalmal*, came into the bay of the river *Ob*, ſo that thereby this navigation may be conſidered as entirely diſcovered and accompliſhed in the year 1738.

In this ſame year the navigation from the *Ob* to the river *Jeniſei*, was alſo made by Lieut. *Owzin*, and *Iwan Koſchelew*, the maſter of the fleet, with two veſſels that were built at *Tobolſk*; for after overcoming many difficulties, they at laſt not only happily doubled Cape *Matſol*, ſituated Eaſt from the bay of the river *Ob*, but alſo without farther hindrance entered the *Jeniſei*.

Lieut. *Prontſchiſchtſchew*, having ſailed from *Jakutzk* on the 27th of *June* 1735, came no farther that ſummer than to the mouth of the river *Olenek*, where he found a *Ruſſian* village lying ſome Werſts up that river, in which he wintered. The following ſummer he proſecuted his voyage, and ſailed by the rivers *Anabara* and *Chatangø*, but did not quite reach the mouth of the river *Taimura*. Here he found a row of iſlands before him that extended from the continent towards the North Weſt, far into the ſea. Between them the ſea was every where full of ice, and no paſſage ſeemed poſſible. *Prontſchiſchtſchew* was of opinion, that if he ſailed along the iſlands he would at laſt meet with an open ſea where theſe iſlands ended. But this was not the caſe, for he ſailed as far as 77 deg. 25 min. North latitude, and found

found such strong ice before him, that now he gave over all hopes of proceeding farther, and returned, soon after which he died.

In the year 1738, Lieut. *Chariton Laptiew* was sent from *Petersburgh* in his stead, and had orders to describe the coasts by land, if he could proceed no farther by sea. In doing of which his travels were of particular use.

Now follows the last voyage into the frozen sea, which was made from the mouth of the river *Lena* towards the East, to discover the way by sea to *Kamtschatka*. It was conducted by Lieutenant *Lassenius*, who proceeded on his voyage from *Jakutzk* on the 30th of *June* 1735, and on the 7th of *August* sailed from the mouth of the *Lena*, or, properly, from *Bulkowskoi Muis*, into the sea; but, on the 14th of the same month, he found himself obliged to look out for a harbour where he might take up his winter quarters, on account of the contrary winds, fogs, and ice. He met with no convenient place for this till the 19th of *August*, when he entered the river *Charaulack*, which falls into the frozen sea between the rivers *Lena* and *Jana*, where his navigation ended. On this river, a werst from its mouth, he met with some old *Jakutzk* habitations, near to which he caused barracks to be built, with partitions, in which he intended to pass the winter with his people; but both he and most of them were seized with such a dreadful scurvy, that out of 52 persons who had sailed out on board the ship from *Jakutzk*, no more than six survived.

*Lassenius* was succeeded by Lieutenant *Dmitri Laptiew*, who, in the beginning of the summer 1736, set out from *Jakutzk* with fresh men for the river *Charaulack*, where the ship lay; he sailed from that place on the 15th of *August*, but, after 48 hours, found such rocks of ice before him to the east and north, that he gave up all hopes of proceeding any farther; and, a consultation being held, it was unanimously agreed upon to return to the *Lena*, which he reached on the 23d of *August*, went up the river in the month of *September*, and, on account of the great quantity of ice driving against the vessel, took his winter quarters at the mouth of the little river *Chotuschtak*. Here the scurvy began to appear among the ship's crew; but a stop was put to the progress of the distemper by using the leaves or points of the dwarf cedar, which grows there, and (according to the custom of that country) frozen fish, which, raw and frozen as they are, are scraped small and eaten. By this food, and constant labour and exercise, most of the men preserved their health, and the sick recovered.

Our academical fellow-travellers were at *Jakutzk* in the beginning of

of the year 1737, when advice was received there from Lieutenant *Laptiew* that this navigation had again miſcarried the ſecond time. The inſtructions given by the ſenate to the commodore, contained, that if ſuch a navigation could not be accompliſhed in the firſt voyage, it was to be attempted a ſecond time; and if they ſhould, even then, meet with obſtacles, the commanding officer ſhould be ſent to *Peterſburgh* to give an account of his voyages to the ſenate and admiralty. Now two voyages had been made in vain, of which, however, Lieutenant *Laptiew* had made but one, ſo that the commodore was undetermined what to do. His inſtructions likewiſe directed him to adviſe with the profeſſors that were in the *Kamtſchatkan* expedition; this was accordingly done, and we all unanimouſly agreed that the deciſion ſhould be left to the ſenate. I had at that time already gathered from the archives of *Jakutzk*, thoſe intelligences of former navigations through the frozen ſea, ſome of which I have inſerted in the beginning of this tract. I digeſted them in proper order, and added other accounts of the preſent nature of the frozen ſea, which I had likewiſe learned at *Jakutzk* from perſons who had navigated in that ſea, and, to promote the common good, in caſe any farther attempt ſhould be made, I delivered my writings to the commodore, who ſent them to *Peterſburgh*, where, in 1742, they were inſerted in the *Peterſburgh* obſervations, by way of extracts.

In conſequence of this, the commodore ſent an order to the Lieutenant *Laptiew* to return with the boat *Irkutzk*, and all the men to *Jakutzk*. He accordingly came, and ſet out for *Peterſburgh*, from whence he was again, in 1738, diſpatched to *Siberia*. Another attempt was to be made, whether the navigation, which, according to the accounts diſcovered by me, had been really accompliſhed many years ago, might not poſſibly be made now. In caſe the Lieutenant ſhould meet with unſurmountable difficulties, he was ordered to follow the coaſt by land, and to make both a circumſtantial deſcription of them, and a chart. It muſt be owned that this able and induſtrious officer ſpared no pains to fulfill the orders he had received, though he did not every where meet with the ſucceſs he could have wiſhed. He arrived in the ſpring 1739 at the firſt open water at *Jakutzk*, embarked on board his former ſhip, and ſailed in her towards the frozen ſea. On the 15th of *Auguſt* he came to the *Swjatoi Noſs*, and at the end of the month to the mouths of the *Jndigirka*, where the winter had already ſet in ſo ſeverely, that the ſhip was frozen in on the 1ſt of *September*. He would have entered one of the mouths of this river had

not

not they been too ſhallow for his ſhip. A ſtorm parted the veſſel from her anchor, and drove her farther into the ſea, where, on the 9th of *September*, ſhe was frozen in again about 60 werſts from the land. There was now no other reſource left but to bring the naval ſtores and proviſions on ſhore, which was happily effected, but the ſhip itſelf, as it could not be a- voided, was left to her fate. *Laptiew* having paſſed the winter on the river *Jndigirka*, went the following ſummer in a ſmall veſſel along the coaſt to the river *Kolyma*; for to follow the coaſts any farther, either by land or by water was not adviſeable, on account of the *Tſchuktſchi*: he therefore went over land to *Anadirsk*, and from thence ſo far as the mouth of the river *Anadir*. Here his expedition was finiſhed, after which no other has been undertaken through the frozen ſea in thoſe parts.

The intent of all theſe endeavours was, on the one hand, to afford an increaſe of knowledge, and more certainty in the geography of thoſe parts, and, on the other, to aſcertain, in the moſt deciſive manner, the impoſſibility of the navigation through the frozen ſea, that had been formerly undertaken by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, in order to diſcover a nearer way to the *Eaſt Indies*, which has here been ſo clearly evinced, that, in my opinion, nobody for the future will eaſily think of attempting any ſuch voyage. To put this important truth in the ſtrongeſt light, I will add the following conſiderations :

Firſt, ſuch a navigation ought to be made in one ſummer, it cannot elſe be of any uſe. But now we have ſeen, that it is not practicable to go in one ſummer, even from *Archangel* to the *Ob*, and from thence to the *Jeniſei*. Five or ſix years have elapſed before one ſuch ſingle voyage was accompliſhed. And have not alſo the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* met with infinite difficulties in their paſſage through the ſtreights of *Weygat?*

In the next place, between the *Pjaſida* and *Chatanga*, a row of iſlands extends from the continent a great way into the ſea, which blocks up all paſſage as well on one ſide as the other. *Jelmerland* is repreſented by *Haſius*, in his map of *Ruſſia*, diſcovered in 1664, according to ancient accounts, uniting *Nova Zembla* to *Siberia*. Theſe iſlands may be the ſame impediment to navigatoin.

The ſame may be ſaid of the vaſt rocks of ice to be met with, that are firmly fixed. Theſe, at the ſame time, raiſe a doubt againſt the opinion of thoſe who are for attempting a navigation, not along the coaſts, but through the wide ſea, near the North pole. 'Tis true, the voyage would be much ſhorter; but would not the obſtructions remain

the very ſame ? For, if the before-mentioned mountains of ice, ſuch as have been found about *Greenland* and *Spitzbergen*, are immovable, there muſt then be ſomething that hinders the motion that would otherwiſe be communicated to them by the ſea and the winds. This may be occaſioned by the ice being continued as far as the North pole, or becauſe under that pole, or near it, there is land to which the mountains of ice are fixed. Capt. *Wood*, in 1676, ſtrongly maintained the probability of the North paſſage, near the North pole, before he commenced that voyage ; but by the voyage itſelf he was ſufficiently convinced of the impoſſibility of it.

It is true, in the deſcription of the moſt ancient navigations through the frozen ſea, I have no where, with certainty, found that great country which has been reported to be ſituated in the frozen ſea ; but this is no proof that it does not exiſt. The *American* coaſt lying oppoſite to the land of the *Tſchuktſchi*, may extend far enough to the North and Weſt, without our knowing it. And if ſo, it would, together with the mountains of ice fixed to it, be directly in the way of thoſe who would paſs near the North pole.

Even the paſſage along the coaſts does not promiſe better ſucceſs than that with which it was attended 100 years ago. The general obſervation that the water in the ſea decreaſes, proves alſo here true. There is to be ſeen along the coaſts of the frozen ſea, wood caſt on ſhore on ſuch heights that now-a-days are not to be reached by any flood or waves. Not far from the mouth of the river *Jana*, in the Weſt, there is ſaid to lie an old *Kotſchè*, about five werſts diſtant from the ſea ſhore, as it is at preſent. From this, an extraordinary flatneſs of the coaſt is to be concluded, which is alſo confirmed by the verbal relations of people who have frequently been on the frozen ſea. But ſuch a change is by no means advantageous for the navigation, which is moſtly made in a channel, not very wide, between the ice and the continent, which grows ſhallower and ſhallower. In the year 1709, it was hardly poſſible to go with *Schitikes* between the rivers *Jndigirka* and *Kolyma*, though theſe veſſels are ſmaller than the *Kotſches* formerly, and draw leſs water, of which I have a written teſtimony. Now, if ſtill ſmaller and flatter veſſels were built, they would do very well for ſuch ſhallow places : but, as, in ſome places, there are likewiſe ſteep rocks that project into the ſea, they would do the leſs ſervice there ; not to mention that ſmall veſſels are entirely contrary to the intention of the voyage.

In the like manner there are impediments which foreign ſhips particularly

cularly would meet with, were they to undertake this paſſage. When, in our days, the navigations through the frozen ſea were to be made, people were ſent out from all the rivers falling into it, who were obliged to erect at their mouths, certain marks, by piling up wood, for the navigators to direct their courſe by, at their arrival in theſe parts. Magazines were eſtabliſhed in ſeveral places along the coaſts, out of which, in caſe of need, the proviſions might be taken. All the Pagan nations, dwelling thereabouts, were apprized of the navigation, and had orders, on the firſt call, to haſten to the aſſiſtance of the mariners. Such advantages no foreign ſhips can promiſe themſelves. They muſt always put a wonderful confidence in their own ſtrength, which, however, may too eaſily fail. They muſt not expect to find any thing but what they bring with them, and, ſuppoſing it was to be hoped that the natives there would not deny foreign ſhips their aſſiſtance, yet they are but ſeldom to be met with along the ſea coaſts, but rather go up the rivers, becauſe they enjoy greater advantages of hunting.

What ſad conſequences muſt attend an *European* ſhip, (like *Heemſkirk* at *Nova Zembla)* when obliged to winter there? The manner of living, and food of the *European* mariners, are by no means fit for ſuch winter quarters. Brandy, ſalt meat, and biſcuit, are no remedies againſt the ſcurvy; and the want of exerciſe, which neceſſarily follows, when a ſailor has nothing to do out of his hut, is ſtill more fatal.

In ſuch caſes the manner of living of the *Ruſſians* may ſerve for a pattern, they almoſt every other year alternately winter at *Nova Zembla*, without any harm. Theſe imitate the *Samojedes* in drinking frequently the freſh blood of rein-deer. The brandy, of which they make proviſion for the voyage, is conſumed before they reach the coaſt of *Nova Zembla*. They know nothing of ſalt, or dry victuals, but live upon the freſh game which they catch, eſpecially on wild rein-deer. Hunting requires continual motion. No body remains there above one day at a time in his hut, except he is hindered from going out by too great a ſtorm, or too much ſnow. Not to mention, that theſe people are provided with good warm furred cloaths, which the *European* ſailors want. Theſe are, in my opinion, reaſons ſufficient to deter any nation from undertaking for the future ſuch an enterpriſe. Father *Caſtel* * was of the ſame opinion before; but it was not then ſupported on a ſufficient foundation, and we ſhould have re-

* *Diſſertation ſur la celebre Terre de* Kamtſchatka, *et ſur celle d'Yeco dans les Memoires de Trevoux* 1737, Juillet. p. 1169.

mained in a continual uncertainty, if the above related navigation through the frozen ſea had not cleared up the matter.

We proceed now to the chief buſineſs of the ſecond *Kamtſchatka* expedition, which conſiſted in the navigations that were to be made from *Ochotzk* and *Kamtſchatka* to the Eaſt and South. Capt. *Spangberg* had in the month of *June* 1734, arrived at *Jakutzk*, and proſecuted the voyage, on the rivers *Aldan*, *Maia*, and *Judoma*, in order to reach, if poſſible, *Judomſkoi Kreſt* before the winter. But he was frozen in, above 150 Werſts from that place, and proceeded on foot with a few men to *Judomſkoi Kreſt*, and *Ochotzk*. That nothing might be wanting there that was moſt neceſſary, the Commodore had ſent thither in the ſpring of 1735, an hundred horſes, every one loaded with five pouds of meal, according to the cuſtom of the country. In the next place, they were endeavouring to tranſport from *Jakutzk* to *Judomſkoi Kreſt*, the naval ſtores and proviſions in veſſels, ſome of which the Commodore had brought with him, and ſome were built at *Jakutzk*, and at the mouth of the river *Maja*. In the ſummer 1736, Capt. *Tſchirikow* had the inſpection of them, and went the ſubſequent winter to *Ochotzk*. In the ſummer 1737, Lieut. *Warel* tranſmitted 33000 pouds of proviſions and materials by the ſame road to *Judomſkoi Kreſt*; but from *Judomſkoi Kreſt* they were tranſported by land, to the river *Urak*, where magazines were eſtabliſhed, new veſſels built, and the ſtores removed to *Ochotzk*, with the firſt open water, when this river, which in ſummer, is very ſhallow, ſwelled very much. The place, on the upper part of the river *Urak*, from whence the veſſels put off, was called *Uratzkoe Plothiſchtſche*; it lies about half way between *Judomskoi Kreſt* and *Ochotzk*; but the river comprehends, with its windings to the ſea, about 200 Werſts, which may be accompliſhed in ſixteen hours, without oars, by means of the ſwift current.

In the mean while, Capt. *Spangberg* had ordered two veſſels to be built at *Ochotzk*, for the voyage he was commanded to make to *Japan*; one an hucker, named *Michael the Archangel*, the other a double ſhallop, called the *Hope*. Theſe were quite finiſhed by the end of the ſummer, 1737. Commodore *Bering*, who came in the ſame ſummer to *Ochotzk*, had two more packet boats built for the *American* voyage, and alſo two veſſels for proviſions, which were only to ſerve as far as *Kamtſchatka*. All theſe were finiſhed in the ſummer 1740, and the two packet boats were called by the names of *St Peter*, and *St Paul*. In the mean time they went on without interruption, in tranſporting the proviſions from

from *Jakutzk* to *Judomskoi Kreſt*, and from thence to *Ochotzk*. A great help towards which was, that, upon the repreſentation of the Commodore, two Lieutenants of the fleet, *Waſilei Larionow*, and *Gabriel Tolbuchin*, were, in 1738, ſent by the Admiralty to *Siberia*, the firſt of whom provided at *Jakutzk*, and the ſecond at *Jakutzk*, whatever was neceſſary for the *Kamtſchatka* expedition.

In conſequence of this, they were able in 1738, to make a beginning with the navigation to *Japan*. Capt. *Spangberg* commanded the hucker *Michael*, and Lieut. *Wolton*, the double ſhallop, called the *Hope*. The boat *Gabriel* of the firſt *Kamtſchatka* voyage, was added to theſe, and the command of her intruſted to the Midſhipman *Scheltinga*; with theſe three veſſels Capt. *Spangberg* ſet ſail from *Ochotzk*, about the middle of *June* 1738. He could not get out ſooner, for the ſea was till that time full of ice, and he had even then much trouble in getting through it. He ſailed firſt towards *Kamtſchatka*, entered the river *Bolſchaia Reka*, and made preparations for his future winter quarters. After a ſhort ſtay there, he directed his courſe to the *Kurilian* iſlands, which he made in the beginning of autumn, having ſteered a South and Weſt courſe, to 46 deg. N. lat. but returned to *Kamtſchatka*, with an intent to put out to ſea earlier the following ſummer, and then to end the navigation. During their winter reſidence at *Bolſcheretzkoi Oſtreg*, Capt. *Spangberg* built a ſmall yacht, or decked ſhallop, of birch wood, with twenty four oars, which he called *Bolſchaia-reka*. This he propoſed to make uſe of in diſcovering the iſlands, as it would be more convenient than either the hucker, or double ſhallop, for the navigation of the narrow ſtreights which ſeparated them.

On *May* 22, 1739, they again put to ſea, with all the four veſſels; and rendezvouſed at the firſt *Kurilian* iſlands, where the Captain gave the officers under him the neceſſary inſtructions, and proper ſignals. This being done, they proſecuted their voyage, on the 1ſt of *June*, ſteering South Eaſt, till about 47 deg. North Lat. without meeting with any land, and then S. W. in order to make the *Kurilian* iſlands again, which they did. On the 14th of *June*, a violent ſtorm came on, with a very thick fog, in which Lieut. *Walton*, with the double ſhallop, was ſeparated from Capt. *Spangberg*, and, tho' they ſought each other for two days, and fired ſeveral guns for ſignals, yet they did not join again during the voyage. Each therefore made his navigation for himſelf, they both landed in *Japan* at different places, and, after their return, gave the following accounts to the Commodore.

Capt.

Capt. *Spangberg* came to an anchor under the land of *Japan*, on the 18th of *June*, in 25 fathom water, accounting himſelf to be in 38 deg. 41 min. N. Lat. The ſhore appeared pleaſant, being interſperſed with valleys, and covered at a diſtance with pretty woods; a multitude of *Japan* veſſels were perceived, two of which came rowing towards them; but when they were at the diſtance of 30 or 40 fathoms, they lay on their oars, and would not approach nearer. When the men on board the ſhip beckoned for them to come up, they did the ſame, and made them underſtand that the Captain and his people ſhould go on ſhore. But this Captain *Spangberg* carefully avoided, nay, he did not long remain in one place, for fear of being ſurprized.

On the 20th of *June*, many *Japaneſe* veſſels were again ſeen, each of which contained ten or twelve men. On the 22d, the captain anchored at another place, in 38 deg. 25 min. N. Lat. there two fiſhing boats came on board, and the men exchanged freſh fiſh, rice, large tobacco leaves, pickled cucumbers, and other things, for various *Ruſſian* goods, with which the ſhip's company were provided. Cloth, and cloaths made of cloth, likewiſe bits of blue glaſs, ſeemed moſt agreeable to the *Japaneſe*, but they did not ſet any value on cotton, or ſilk ſtuffs, nor on looking-glaſſes, ſciſſars, needles, and ſuch like implements, that were ſhewn them, having all theſe in their own country. They were very civil, and reaſonable in their prices.

The ſhip's company got from them ſome oblong ſquare gold coin, of the ſame kind as are deſcribed and repreſented by *Kaempfer*; they are not of ſo high a colour as the *Dutch* ducats, and ſomewhat lighter, as I have found by examining one of them, and obſerved, by comparing it to a *Dutch* ducat, the difference in weight to be two grains.

The following day, ſeventy-nine ſuch fiſhing-boats were ſeen at a diſtance, all of which were flat at the ſtern, and ſharp at the head. Their breadth was from four and a half to five feet, their length about twenty-four feet; in the midſt was a deck, upon which a ſmall hearth was placed; the rudder might be taken out, and ſtowed away when not uſed: Some veſſels had two rudders, both behind, one on each ſide; theſe are bent quite crooked: They uſe their oars ſtanding, and are alſo provided with graplings.

They uſe another kind of veſſels to trade to the circumjacent iſlands, and even along the coaſt, when their voyage is of any length. Theſe

are

are much larger than the former, ſharp equally at the head and the ſtern: they carry more people, and ſail better, though chiefly before the wind, for they can do nothing on a wind, they are therefore eaſily caſt away by contrary winds and weather, for the people, on account of their inexperience in navigation, do not know how to help themſelves, but ſubmit to their fate. Such were thoſe which were ſtranded on the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka*.

The *Japaneſe* are moſtly of a ſmall ſtature, and of a ſwarthy complexion, with black eyes, and flat noſes. The men, and great boys, ſhave their hair from the forehead to the crown, the reſt of the hair is combed ſmooth, and made to ſhine with glue; it is tied in the neck behind, and wrapped up in a paper. But little boys are diſtinguiſhed by a ſhaved patch in the middle of the crown, one and a half, or two inches over, about which the reſt of their hair is dreſſed in the ſame manner as that of the former, their cloaths are long and wide, after the manner of the *European* night-gowns; they do not wear breeches, but, inſtead of them, the lower part of their bodies is wrapped up in linnen.

Before Capt. *Spangberg* left this place, a great canoe came to his ſhip, in which ſat four men, beſides the mariners, who, if we may judge from their embroidered cloaths, and appearance in other reſpects, ſeemed to be people of condition. The Captain invited them into his cabin; at going in they bowed down to the ground, held up their hands folded over their heads, and kneeled till the Captain deſired them to riſe; they were entertained with brandy and eatables which they ſeemed to like. When the Captain ſhewed them a chart of thoſe parts, and alſo a globe, they immediately knew their country, the name of which they pronounced *Niphon*. They likewiſe pointed out with their fingers, on the chart, the iſlands *Matſmai* and *Sado*, and alſo the Capes *Songar* and *Noto*. At parting, they again bowed to the ground, and expreſſed their thanks, as well as they could, for what they had received; the ſame day, the former fiſhing-boats came again, and brought ſeveral things for ſale, which they exchanged for *Ruſſian* goods.

Captain *Spangberg* made no doubt but the chief deſign of his voyage, which was the diſcovery of the proper ſituation of *Japan*, with reſpect to the country of *Kamtſchatka*, was now fulfilled. Therefore, ſome days after, he ſet out on his return, wherein he made ſeveral obſervations on the iſlands he had ſeen before, and by which he was obliged to repaſs. I cannot avoid mentioning his obſervations, referring

ferring for the reſt to the map he has made of this voyage, contained in the *Ruſſian* Atlas.

He ſailed to the N. E. and arrived on the 3d of *July*, in lat. 43 deg. 50 min. at a great iſland, before which he anchored in 30 fathoms water, and ſent his birch yacht with a boat on ſhore, in ſearch of freſh water; but they could find no landing-place, on account of the ſteep rocks, of which the coaſt conſiſted. He therefore ſailed to another place, from whence the boat was again ſent aſhore, which brought thirteen caſks of good water on board. On this iſland grew birch, firs, and other trees, unknown to the *Ruſſian* ſailors; they ſaw men, who ran away as ſoon as they perceived the *Ruſſians*; they found leathern boats, and the bottom covering, or ſoles of ſledges, made after the *Kurilian* or *Kamtſchatkan* manner. This induced the Captain to ſail nearer, and to come to an anchor in a ſandy bottom, in a bay, at eight fathoms water. In this bay was a village, to which the Captain ſent a ſhallop, which brought eight of the inhabitants on board.

The aſpect and ſtature of thoſe people were like thoſe of the *Kuriles*, and they ſpoke the ſame language. The chief difference between them conſiſted in this, that they had pretty long hair all over their bodies, the men of a middling age had black, and the old had grey beards; ſome of them wore ſilver ear-rings. Their cloaths were made of ſilk ſtuffs of various colours, and reached to their feet, which were bare. They had brandy given them to drink, and preſents were alſo made them of various trifles, which they thankfully received. When they ſaw a live cock on board the ſhip, they fell upon their knees, clapped their hands together over their heads, and bowed down to the ground, both before the cock, and for the preſents they had received. After which the Captain ſet them aſhore.

On the 9th of *July*, Capt. *Spangberg* left this iſland, and ſailed to diſcover the ſituation of the others in its neighbourhood, in order to inſert them with certainty in his map. This was not done without danger and inconvenience. Sometimes they had only from three to four or five fathoms water; many of the ſhip's company, about this time, fell ſick, and ſeveral died ſoon after. On the 23d of *July*, he arrived by a South Weſt courſe at the iſland *Matſmai*, lying in 41 deg. 22 min. North lat. where he found three large *Japaneſe* buſſes, on which account he prepared for an engagement, in caſe they ſhould attack him, and was ſo cautious that he would neither ſend aſhore, nor come to an anchor; but, on the 25th, ſet ſail on his return to *Kamtſchatka*,

*Jchatka.* On the 15th of *Auguſt* he reached the mouth of the river *Bolſchaiareka*, which he entered in order to give his people a little reſt. On the 20th he ſet ſail again, on his return to *Ochotzk*, where he arrived on the 29th, and found Lieut. *Walton* already there, from whoſe report I ſhall now mention what is moſt remarkable.

*Walton* having been ſeparated in a fog and tempeſt, from Captain *Spangberg*, whom he endeavoured in vain to rejoin, took the reſolution to ſeek, without loſs of time, the land of *Japan*, of which he got ſight two days after, *viz.* on the 16th, in 38 deg. 17 min. N. lat. According to his account, he was then from the firſt *Kurilian* iſland, 11 deg. 45 min. of long. He ſtill continued his courſe to the South, till he came to 33 deg. 48 min. North lat. following moſtly the coaſts, and made the following obſervations: On the 17th of *June*, being near the ſhore, 39 *Japaneſe* veſſels of the ſize of gallies appeared, ſeeming to come out of a harbour; but ſoon ſeparated for different places. They had ſtraight ſails of cotton ſtuffs, ſome blue and white ſtriped, others all white. *Walton* purſued one of them in ſearch of a harbour, and arrived before a great town or city, where he anchored in 30 fathoms water. On the 19th, a *Japaneſe* veſſel, with 18 perſons on board, came to the *Ruſſian* ſhip. As the people appeared very civil, and by tokens gave them to underſtand that they might come on ſhore, the lieutenant ſent the ſecond mate, *Lew Kaſimerow*, and the quarter-maſter *Tſcherkaſchenin*, with ſix armed ſoldiers in a yawl aſhore, and gave them two empty caſks, which they were to fill with freſh water. He provided them, at the ſame time, with things of which they were to make preſents to the *Japaneſe*, in order to gain their friendſhip.

When theſe approached the ſhore, above 100 ſmall veſſels came to meet them, and crowded ſo hard upon the yawl, that they could ſcarce uſe their oars. The *Japaneſe* rowers were naked to the girdle. They ſhewed pieces of gold, of which they had not a ſmall quantity, ſeemingly indicating that they had a mind to engage in trade with their foreign gueſts. Mean while, the yawl landed, and the ſmall veſſels ſtayed behind at ſome diſtance. On the ſhore were aſſembled an innumerable multitude of people, they all bowed to the new comers. The two empty water-caſks were carried aſhore by the *Japaneſe* with great complaiſance, filled with water, and brought back into the yawl.

During this interval, the ſecond mate and the quarter-maſter, with four ſoldiers, went on ſhore, leaving two ſoldiers to take care of the

yawl. The town conſiſted of about 1500 wooden and ſtone houſes, which took up a ſpace of about three werſts along the coaſt. *Kaſimerow* went into the houſes, in which he ſaw that his caſks were carried. At the door he was received by the landlord in an extraordinary friendly manner, conducted into an apartment, and entertained with wine and deſerts, which were both ſerved in porcelain veſſels. The deſert conſiſted in grapes, apples, oranges, and preſerved radiſhes. Out of this houſe he went into another, where he was treated in the ſame manner, and, beſides, had boiled rice preſented him to eat. The ſame was done to the quarter-maſter and ſoldiers that were with him. *Kaſimerow*, on his part, preſented his benefactors, and the people who took care of his caſks, with glaſs beads, and other trifles. After this, he patroled the town a little, and obſerved every where, as well in the houſes as ſtreets, a great deal of cleanlineſs and good order. In ſome places he met with ſhops, where chiefly cotton ſtuffs were ſold. In this hurry they did not obſerve any ſilk ſtuffs. Horſes, cows, and hens, he found in abundance. The fruits of the field there conſiſted in wheat and peaſe.

When *Kaſimerow* returned to his yawl again, he ſaw before him two men with ſabres, and one had two ſabres in his hands. This filled him with ſome apprehenſions, wherefore he hurried to the ſhip as faſt as he could.

Above one hundred ſmall *Japaneſe* veſſels, with 15 men in each, followed the yawls to obſerve the ſhip near at hand. In one of them was a gentleman, who ordered a rope to be thrown into the yawl to have his ſmall veſſel drawn quite near the ſhip. He came on board; by his fine ſilk cloaths, and the reſpect that was ſhewed to him by his retinue, it was judged he was the governor of the place. He made a preſent to Lieut. *Walton* of a veſſel with wine, which the latter brought with him to *Ochotzk*. The wine was of a dark brown colour, pretty ſtrong, and not diſagreeable of taſte, only ſomewhat tart. But it might perhaps be damaged by the heat at ſea. Theſe civilities the Lieutenant returned by other preſents. He treated, moreover, his gueſt and his retinue with victuals and drink, when it was obſerved, that the *Japaneſe* did not find the taſte of the *Ruſſian* brandy amiſs. At the ſame time the ſhip's crew carried on a little trade with the *Ruſſians*. Whatever the latter had, even old ſhirts, ſtockings, *&c.* the *Japaneſe* liked. They paid for them in their copper coin, which, as that of the *Chineſe*, has a ſquare hole in the middle, and is ſtrung together.

together. At last the person of quality, with demonstrations of satisfaction and gratitude, returned to the town. In the mean time *Walton* observed that the number of small vessels which surrounded his ship, continually increased, and therefore thinking himself not safe, weighed anchor and put to sea again, having first fired a gun in token of his taking leave.

The 22d of *June* he made land again, and anchored in 23 fathoms water, but, the anchor not holding, they were obliged to weigh it again, and look about for a more convenient landing place, but the coast was every where steep and rocky. In one place vessels were observed, which, though not small, were drawn ashore for want of an harbour. *Walton* therefore returned to the place where he could not before succeed in anchoring, when some small vessels came off to his assistance; he gave them to understand that he was in want of water. Immediately the *Japanese* took the casks that were given them, went ashore, and returned with them full of fresh water. They also shewed our people a written paper, which was taken for an order, by virtue of which they are obliged to give all assistance to strangers. It seemed as if the *Japannese* wanted to give the lieutenant to understand to come nearer to the shore, where there was a harbour, into which the ship might be hauled; and that they would help him in it. But before *Walton* resolved upon it a boat came from the shore which forbad the people any farther communication. In the boat was a person who was taken for a soldier, having a sword by his side, and a pistol in his hand, on which Lieutenant *Walton* supposed this to be a *Japanese* guard-boat.

The next day they came to an anchor in another place, near the shore, in two fathoms water, where the ground consisted in a coarse sand and muscle-shells. Considering the great heat of the summer, they could not lay in too much fresh water; and besides, this furnished always new opportunities to get intelligence about the country. Wherefore on the 24th of *June*, *Walton* sent the second gunner, *Jurge Alexandrow*, with some men, and a surgeon's apprentice, named *Iwan Djagilew*, in the yawl on shore. *Alexandrow* found no water, but saw *Japanese*, who were clad in long white linnen frocks. The horses in this country were of a dark brown and black colour. He brought back with him an orange-tree, pearl-shells, and the branch of a pine-tree. But the apprentice gathered herbs, and especially provided himself with the buds of the fir-tree, of which decoctions were afterwards made for the sick on board the ship.

*Walton* failed about the coasts of *Japan* a while longer, and then stretched pretty far to the East, to see whether he could not discover any land or islands there, but not finding any he returned for *Kamtschatka*, and arrived on the 23d of *July* on the river of *Bolschaiareka*, where he tarried till the 7th of *August*, to join, if possible, Capt. *Spangberg*. But as in the mean time the latter did not arrive, he proceeded on his voyage to *Ochotzk*, which he reached the 21st of *August*.

It is not necessary to make particular mention of the third vessel, commanded by the midshipman *Scheltinga*, he having had the same fate with the captain, from whom he was not separated during the voyage. *Spangberg*, as well as *Walton*, have made charts of their navigations, from which those are composed that are inserted in the *Russian* Atlas.

After his arrival, Capt. *Spangberg* obtained permission from the commodore to winter at *Jakutzk*, and then to travel to *Petersburgh*, in order to give an account of his expedition, in person, to the senate and admiralty. Mean time advice was sent to *Petersburg* of the discoveries made by him, which at first were well received, and occasioned the commodore's order about Capt. *Spangberg*'s return to *Petersburg* to be confirmed; but the opinions soon changed. The proofs of *Spangberg*'s having been in *Japan* were looked upon as not convincing enough. *Kirilow*'s general map of *Russia*, after the example of *Strahlenberg*'s, represented *Japan* almost under the same meridian with *Kamtschatka*; whereas, according to the course and observations of *Spangberg* and *Walton*, it ought to lie 11 or 12 degrees more to the Westward. It was believed *Spangberg* might have mistaken the coasts of *Korea* for *Japan*; and it was thought proper that he should attempt a second navigation, and that, in this expedition, he should have two *Russian* lads for interpreters, who had learnt the *Japanese* language from the *Japanese* that had been sent to *Petersburg* in the year 1732.

This order *Spangberg* received at *Kirenskoi Ostrog* in the month of *July* 1740, as he was on his road to *Petersburg*. He immediately returned to *Jakutzk*, and from thence proceeded to *Ochotzk*, where he did but just see the commodore, who had by that time got every thing ready for his own intended voyage. In the mean while the proper season for the voyage to *Japan* was not only past for this year, but a vessel was likewise wanting, since one of those which *Spangberg* had used in his first voyage was sent to *Kamtschatka* by order of the commodore, on account of certain preparations. It was therefore necessary

to

to build a new one, which was done the following winter under *Spangberg*'s own inſpection, who reſided at *Ochotzk* till the veſſel was compleated.

In the ſummer 1741, he went to ſea with her, but ſhe ſoon became ſo leaky that they could ſcarce reach the coaſts of *Kamtſchatka*. The reaſon of it was aſcribed to the haſty building of the veſſel, and the greeneſs of the wood, which had no time to dry. The refitting of her at the mouth of the river *Bolſchaia-reka*, and *Spangberg*'s paſſing the winter, for this reaſon, at *Bolſcheretzkoi Oſtrog*, was to no purpoſe: For when he ſet ſail the ſecond time on the 25th of *May* 1742, and had hardly paſſed the firſt *Kurilian* iſland, ſhe let in the water again ſo faſt that he was not able to prevent it or ſtop the leaks. In this ſituation of affairs *Spangberg* did not chooſe to return without gaining ſome informations. He therefore ſent out the midſhipman *Scheltinga*, to make diſcoveries as far as the mouth of the river *Amur*, but even this was not attended with the wiſhed for ſucceſs. In ſhort, the whole ſecond voyage of Capt. *Spangberg* was nothing but a ſeries of adverſities. Thus ended the navigation to *Japan*.

By degrees the opinions of people altered, and they began to believe that our ſailors had not miſſed the aim the firſt time: And now no body doubts any more of it, ſince the moſt famous *French* geographers, ſuch as *D'Anville*, *Buache*, and *Bellin*, admit in their maps as great, nay a ſomewhat greater difference of longitude between *Kamtſchatka* and *Japan*, than *Spangberg* and *Walton*.

The expedition of Capt. *Spangberg* to *Japan* in the year 1738, had deprived the chief detachment at *Ochotzk* in ſuch a manner of proviſion, that two years elapſed before it was ſufficiently ſupplied again by freſh importations. During which time two new veſſels more were built at *Ochotzk*, *viz.* the packet-boats St *Peter* and St *Paul*, which were properly deſigned for the intended *American* diſcoveries. The Commodore had ſent before him to *Kamtſchatka*, in autumn 1739, the pilot *Iwan Jelagin*, with one of the veſſels that had been with Capt. *Spangberg*, in order to enquire into the bay of *Awatſcha*, on the Eaſt coaſt of that country, where there was reported to be all the requiſite conveniencies for a harbour, and, at the ſame time, to eſtabliſh magazines, and build barracks there. In the following ſpring 1740, the profeſſors, *De Liſle*, *De la Croyere*, and the Adjunctus *Steller*, arrived at *Ochotzk*, and alſo from *Peterſburgh*, the lieutenant of the fleet, *Iwan Tſchichatſchew*, and the maſter of the fleet *Sophron Chitrow*, who

ſoon

ſoon after was made a lieutenant; theſe latter were to ſupply the places of other ſick and diſcharged officers.

Now, every thing being compleated, it was reſolved to paſs over to *Kamtſchatka* in the ſame ſummer; but the departure was delayed till the 4th of *September*. The commodore conducted the packet-boat St *Peter*, and Capt. *Tſchirikow* the packet-boat St *Paul*. Two other ſhips were loaded with proviſions, and *De la Croyere* and *Steller* had a particular veſſel for their ſtores, with which they followed the reſt of this ſmall ſquadron the 8th of *September*, and the packet-boats arrived at the mouth of the river *Bolſchaia-reka* the 20th, when the commodore ordered the ſtoreſhips to enter it. *De la Croyere*'s and *Steller*'s voyage was finiſhed here, becauſe they had propoſed to make obſervations and diſcoveries at *Bolſcheretzkoi Oſtrog*; but the commodore and captain *Tſchirikow* finding the entrance into the river too ſhallow for their ſhips, went the next day farther, and doubling the South point *Kamtſchatka*, made the harbour *Awatſcha*.

In paſſing the ſtreights between this point and the firſt *Kurilian* iſlands, the commodore perceived, by the danger he found himſelf in, how neceſſary the precaution had been of his leaving behind him the ſtore-ſhips at *Bolſchaia-reka*. In the midſt of the ſtreights, which is reckoned three leagues broad and one league long, there lies a great ridge of rocks, over which the water rolls; it is navigable on both ſides, but the South paſſage being broader, is preferable to that on the North ſide. Favourable and ſtrong as the wind was with which the commodore entered the ſtreight, it availed little, ſince juſt, at that very time, he had a ſtrong tide of flood againſt him, and being unacquainted with theſe ſeas, he had never ſeen ſuch a one before. For an hour together it could not be obſerved by the coaſts that the ſhip had advanced in the leaſt. The waves, which were very high, beat over the ſhip's ſtern, and a boat that was tied to the ſhip, with a rope of forty fathom long, often beat againſt the ſhip with great violence, nay, once it had almoſt been flung on board by the waves. We had from ten to twelve fathoms water, but the ſhip, in the trough of the waves, was reckoned to be hardly three fathoms from the ground. The wind was ſo vehement that they could only carry the fore-ſail and top-ſail, and nothing was to be done but to keep the ſhip ſteady before the wind, againſt the flood, for had they turned her ever ſo little, they would have been in great danger of foundering. Beſides, the aforeſaid ridge of rocks was very near, which required their utmoſt ſkill carefully to avoid. When the vehemence of the flood began ſomewhat

what to abate, the ſhip advanced by little and little, and having quite paſſed the ſtreights, they at laſt ſaw themſelves quite free from all farther impediments. This difficulty only happened to the commodore, whereas *Tſchirikow*, paſſing through an hour and a half later, met with no obſtructions of that nature.

It was on the 26th of *September* when they paſſed the ſaid ſtreights, and on the following day they arrived off the bay of *Awatſcha*; but a thick fog juſt riſing at that time, hindered them from diſcerning the entrance, and obliged them to put to ſea again; but in the end, both packet-boats had the good luck to enter the bay and harbour of *Awatſcha* on the 8th of *October*, where they ſpent the following winter.

This bay has its name from the river *Awatſcha*, or properly, according to *Kamtſchadalian* pronunciation, *Suaatſcha*, and empties itſelf from the Weſtward into the bay, which is almoſt circular, and about twenty Werſts in diameter: The entrance may be from 3 to 400 fathoms broad, extending to the Southward, and is ſo deep that large ſhips may ſail through it. The bay itſelf is alſo of a good depth. Three ſmaller bays lying in this large bay were all alike convenient for harbours, *viz. Niakina*, *Kakowaia*, and *Tareinaia-guba*, differing only as to ſize. The pilot *Jelagin* had choſen the firſt and leaſt for a harbour for the packet-boats, which he named *Petropaulowſka*, or the harbour of St *Peter* and St *Paul*, and near it had built magazines, houſes, and barracks.

An officer, who, during forty years, had navigated the ſeas to all parts of the univerſe, and was now in this expedition, gave this harbour the character of being the beſt place for ſhipping that ever he had ſeen. It will hold twenty ſhips conveniently, is covered from all winds, has a fine ſandy bottom, and from 14 to 18 feet water; ſo that larger veſſels than packet-boats may lie in it. There is, moreover, very good and wholeſome water found in the neighbourhood, particularly that of the river *Awatſcha*, which is much preferred before the water of ſome rivers and brooks thereabouts, that have their ſources out of moraſſes. From the entrance of the large bay to the harbour, the courſe is N.N.W. and N.W. by N. when you will find 8, 9, 10, and 11 fathoms water, and a ſecure paſſage over ſandy ground, except about three Werſts before the harbour, where in the middle of the channel there lies ſeveral ſunk rocks, of which you muſt be cautious, as there is but eight feet of water over them. The higheſt water there, at the time of the new or full moon, when the ſpring tides happen, riſes

riſes five feet eight inches *Engliſh* meaſure, according to obſervations that have been made for that purpoſe.

During the winter quarters at *Petropawlowſka*, every endeavour was uſed to get all the proviſions that were brought to *Bolſcheretzkoi*, tranſported thither; but that could not be quite compleated; for the diſtance between theſe two places is 212 Werſts, and, as there are no horſes in *Kamtſchatka*, they were obliged to put dogs to the carriages, which could be procured no nearer than at the diſtance of four or five hundred Werſts; eight or ten times as many dogs were required as they would have wanted horſes, for the latter, in *Ruſſia*, draw in winter time, where the roads are bad, forty pouds, for which weight eight or ten dogs are neceſſary in *Kamtſchatka*. The *Kamtſchedales* were not uſed to ſuch delays, eſpecially at ſo great a diſtance from their habitations, ſo that it occaſioned many hindrances: But they had been aware of this, and therefore had bought up a good number of reindeer at *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, and drove them to *Awatſcha*, where they had a good paſture, which ſerved for their ſupport during the following winter; they likewiſe got dried fiſh in abundance from the *Kamtſchedales*, ſo that half of the uſual ſea proviſion could be ſaved. In the following ſpring 1741, the commodore ordered one of the ſhips that remained behind at *Bolſcheretzkoi*, to bring over the reſt of the proviſions that were left there, ſhe arrived happily in the harbour of *Petropawlowſka*, before he put to ſea, and delivered her cargo, partly on board the ſhips that were ready to ſail, and partly into the magazines there.

When the roads began to grow better, *De la Croyere* and *Steller* went to *Petropawlowſka* to aſſiſt in the intended *American* diſcoveries. The commodore took the latter with him, and the firſt joined *Tſchirikow*.

Now the queſtion was, what courſe they ſhould ſteer in their voyage? To determine which, the commodore, on the 4th of *May*, called all the officers together to hold a council, to which the Profeſſor *De la Croyere* was alſo invited. Every one was to give his opinion, out of which the beſt was to be choſen. Now the indications of a near country towards the Eaſt were known to every one, and the officers had judged, during the whole winter, that the courſe muſt be kept towards the Eaſt, or ſomewhat Northerly. But with this *De Liſle*'s map did not agree, which, I have mentioned above, had been preſented by the academy to the ſenate, who had given it to the commodore that he might be directed by it. *De la Croyere* had alſo a

copy

copy of it, which he produced in the council. No land was ſet down upon it towards the Eaſt, but, on the contrary, there was marked on this map South-Eaſt from *Awatſcha* in 46 to 47 deg. North lat. a coaſt extending 15 deg. from Weſt to Eaſt, in ſuch a manner that it had only been ſeen on the South ſide. The words *Terres vues par dom* Jean de Gama, [land ſeen by Don *Jean Gama*] were put to it. Accordingly it was judged by the maritime council, that if ſuch a coaſt really exiſted in thoſe parts, as they truſted the authors of the map would not have repreſented it on an uncertainty, then that land might extend far enough to the Eaſt, and therefore it was determined firſt to ſteer S. E. by S. towards that land, and, having diſcovered it, to make its coaſts ſerve as a guide to the North and Eaſt; but, if it ſhould not be found in 46 deg. North lat. then to alter the courſe, and to ſail ſo long to the Eaſt, and Eaſt by North, till they ſhould diſcover land, which they were to follow between North and Eaſt, or between North and Weſt, as far as the 65th deg. North lat. and to order the voyage in ſuch a manner as to be able to return to *Awatſcha* in the month of *September*.

Since this determination was afterwards looked upon by the mariners that were in the expedition as the ſource of all the misfortunes they had met with on the voyage, it is neceſſary to dwell a little upon the ſubject. It is not known who *Jean de Gama* was, nor when the diſcovery was made that is aſcribed to him. All we know is, that, in the year 1649, *Texeira*, coſmographer to the King of *Portugal*, publiſhed a map, in which is repreſented 10 or 12 degrees North Eaſt from *Japan*, in 44 to 45 deg. North lat. a multitude of iſlands, and a coaſt extending towards the Eaſt, with the following words, *Terre vue par* Jean de Gama Indien *en allant de la* Chine *a la* Nouvelle Eſpagne*, (land ſeen by *John de Gama* the *Indian*, in going from *China* to *New Spain*) ſo that the diſcovery has been made either at the ſame time as that of the ſhip *Caſtricom*, or before; and the ſituation of the land of *Gama*, as it is repreſented in *Texeira*'s maps, ſeems not to be diſtinguiſhed from the company's land, diſcovered by the ſame ſhip *Caſtricom*. Our ſailors are of opinion that they were miſled to an unprofitable navigation by *De Liſle*'s map. This is true with reſpect to the navigation to *America*, which, by this means, was very much retarded. But the only fault is, that M. *De Liſle* has placed the land of *Gama* too much towards the Eaſt, as belonging to the *American* diſcoveries, whereas it ought to have been among thoſe of *Japan* or *Jeſo*. If he had done

* *Conſiderationes Geographiques et Phyſiques par M.* Buache, p. 128.

this, the discovery of it would have been committed to Capt. *Spangberg*, and it would have been no mistake if no more of it had been discovered than *Jeso*, *Staten* island, or the *Company's Land*. We need not wonder if the land of *Gama*, and the *Company's Land*, have met with the same fate as the land of *Jeso*. As for the rest, it has been observed, that the land of *Gama* is now either not at all represented by geographers, or made so minute, and placed so near *Japan* and the *Company's Land*, that there remains hardly any difference between it and the *Company's Land*. We need but to examine in this respect the most modern maps of M. *D'Anville*, *Bellin*, *Green*, *Buache*, and even *De Lisle's*.

All necessary regulations being finished, and the ships stored with as much provisions as they could contain, the voyage was begun with both ships on the 4th of *June* 1741. They steered the course agreed upon, *viz.* South East by South, till the 12th of the said month, when they found themselves in 46 deg. North lat. There was no occasion for this to be convinced of the non-existence of the lands of *Gama*. They went with a Northerly course as far as 50 deg. North lat. intending to go from thence Easterly, in order to discover the continent of *America*, but Capt. *Tschirikow*, in a violent storm and fog, was separated on the 20th from the Commodore.

This was their first misfortune, the ships were thereby deprived of the mutual assistance which they might have received from each other, and which was the intention of fitting out two ships at once, with instructions for them never to separate. The Commodore did all in his power to find *Tschirikow*; he cruized three days between 50 and 51 deg. North lat. and then sailed back to the South East as far as 45 deg. but all in vain. *Tschirikow* had taken an East course, from 48 deg. North lat. which the Commodore commenced in 45 deg. which was the cause of their not meeting again; but nevertheless they both made discoveries which most exactly agree.

Nothing particular happened till the 18th of *July*, when the Commodore having given orders for steering still more and more Northerly, got sight of the continent of *America* in 58 deg. 28 min. North lat. and believed, according to his journal, that he had sailed 50 deg. East long. from *Awatscha*. Capt. *Tschirikow* had reached the same coast three days before, *viz.* on the 15th of *July*, in 56 deg. North lat. and, according to his account, 60 deg. long. from *Awatscha*. But both may have been somewhat mistaken in the difference of longitude; for, if we compare their voyage thither with their return, it seems that the Com-

Commodore was on the coaſt of *America* in 60, and Capt. *Tſchirikow* in 65 deg. long. from *Awatſcha*, Now, the longitude from the harbour of St *Peter* and *Paul*, in the bay of *Awatſcha*, is about 176 deg. 12 ½ min. from the firſt meridian of *Ferro*; conſequently the longitude of the coaſts of *America*, for the firſt place, amounts to 236, and, for the ſecond, to 241 deg. but, if theſe places are conſidered with reſpect to the neareſt known parts of *California*, then the difference of latitude between Cape *Blanco*, the moſt northerly part of *California*, and the place where Capt. *Tſchirikow* was, is only 13 deg. lat. and the longitude not much above 5 deg. A diſtance indeed very conſiderable, which might deſerve to be enquired into, eſpecially as this is the place to which is aſcribed the dubious diſcoveries of Admiral *de Fontes*. But of this our navigators had, at that time, no intelligence.

The coaſt made by Capt. *Tſchirikow* was ſteep and rocky, without any iſlands, wherefore he did not dare to approach it, but anchored at ſome diſtance: Yet, as he intended to enquire into the nature of the country, and, being likewiſe in want of freſh water, he ſent the mate, *Abraham Dementiew*, with ten of his beſt men, and the long-boat aſhore, having firſt furniſhed them with proviſions for ſome days, with guns and other arms, a braſs cannon, and every other requiſite, together with circumſtantial inſtructions, how, on various occaſions they ought to behave, and to make themſelves underſtood by ſignals. The boat was ſeen to row into a bay behind a ſmall Cape. It was concluded that ſhe was fortunately arrived aſhore, becauſe ſuch ſignals were made as were ordered in that caſe. Several days paſt, but the boat did not come back; and yet ſignals continued without interruption. The people on board began to think the boat might have received damage in landing, and could not return to the ſhip without being repaired; therefore it was determined to ſend aſhore, in the ſmall boat, the boatſwain, *Sidor Sawelow*, with three men, (another account ſays ſix men) amongſt whom were carpenters, and a careener well armed and provided with the neceſſary materials. This was done on the 21ſt of *July*. *Sawelew* had orders, when he had given the neceſſary aſſiſtance to *Dementiew* to return, either with him or by himſelf, to the ſhip. But neither of them obeyed theſe orders: In the mean while a great ſmoke was obſerved, ariſing continually from the ſhore.

The next day two veſſels came rowing from the land towards the ſhip. The one was larger than the other: It was believed, on their

being ſeen afar off, that it was *Dementiew* and *Sawelew* with the two boats. From this opinion, Capt. *Tſchirikow* ordered all the men upon deck, and directed them to prepare for their departure; but theſe were *Americans*, who, ſeeing many people upon the deck, ceaſed rowing, and lay on their oars at ſome diſtance from the veſſel; they then ſtood up, and crying out with a loud voice *Agai*, *Agai*, ſpeedily returned towards the ſhore. If it be true, that the *Americans* were afraid of the many *Ruſſians* on deck, and that imagining there were few or none left on board the ſhip, they might therefore eaſily make themſelves maſters of it, it would then have been better for *Tſchirikow* to have concealed his men. The *Americans* would, perhaps, have come on board; and, if they had, they and their veſſels might have been ſeized, and exchanged for the *Ruſſians* and their boats on ſhore. But the joy he felt at thinking that *Dementiew* and *Sawelew* were returning, was ſo great, that no ſuch precaution was thought of.

Now they began to give up all hopes of ſeeing their comrades return from ſhore; they had no more ſmall boats, and durſt not venture to approach the land with the ſhip, on account of the rocky coaſt; at this juncture, a ſtrong Weſt wind ariſing, and the ſhip being at anchor towards the open ſea, without ſhelter, they were obliged to weigh anchor, and put to ſea again, for fear of being driven againſt the rocks. *Tſchirikow* cruized ſome days longer in theſe parts, and when the weather began to grow milder, he ſailed again towards the place where his people were landed. It muſt be ſaid, in his praiſe, that it was with regret he was obliged to leave his countrymen on ſuch a remote coaſt, and among Savages; but as now he neither heard nor ſaw any thing of them, it was concluded, in a council of the reſt of the ſea-officers, to return to *Kamtſchatka*, which was done on the 27th of *July*.

At the time when this happened, Commodore *Bering* likewiſe attempted to get a better account of the coaſt which he had diſcovered, and to provide himſelf with freſh water. The country had terrible high mountains that were covered with ſnow. He ſailed towards it; but only ſmall variable breezes blowing, he could reach it no ſooner than the 20th of *July*, when, under a pretty large iſland, not far from the continent, he anchored in 22 fathoms water, and a ſoft clayey bottom. A point of land, which there projects into the ſea, they called *St Elias's Cape*, on account of its being *Elias* day. Another headland, that afterwards appeared oppoſite the firſt, towards the Weſt, received its name from St *Hermogenes*. Between theſe there

there was a bay, in which they promiſed themſelves ſecurity, in caſe their circumſtances ſhould require their ſeeking for a harbour.

For this purpoſe, the Commodore ſent *Chitrow*, the maſter of the fleet, with ſome armed men, to reconnoitre this bay; another boat, in which was the Adjunctus *Steller*, was ſent at the ſame time to fetch water. *Chitrow* found between ſome iſlands a convenient anchoring place, ſecure from all winds, but there was no occaſion to make uſe of it. He alſo found in an iſland ſome empty huts, which made them imagine that the inhabitants on the continent uſed to come thither on account of the fiſhery. Theſe huts were formed of ſmooth boards, ſome of which were carved; whence it may be concluded, that the inhabitants are not quite ſo wild and uncivilized as thoſe in *North America* are generally deſcribed to be. In the huts he found a ſmall box made of poplar, a hollow earthen ball, in which a ſtone rattled, like a toy for children; and a whetſtone, on which it appeared that copper knives had been ſharpened. Thus neceſſity teaches the making uſe of one metal inſtead of another. Even in *Siberia*, in the uppermoſt parts on the river *Jeniſei*, all ſorts of edge tools made of copper have been found in the antient *Pagan* graves, but none of iron, which is a proof that the uſe of copper has been of greater antiquity in thoſe regions than that of iron.

I ſhall only mention what is moſt material in *Steller*'s obſervations. He met with a cellar, and in it ſtore of red ſalmon, and a ſweet herb*, which is dreſſed for food in the ſame manner as in *Kamtſchatka*; there lay likewiſe ropes, and all ſorts of houſhold furniture. He came to a place where ſome *Americans* had but juſt before dined, who fled on his approach. He there found an arrow, and a wooden inſtrument to procure fire, made in the ſame manner as they have them in *Kamtſchatka* †, which things the *Americans* left behind them when they ran away. *Steller* gathered herbs, and brought ſuch a quantity of them to the ſhip, that the deſcribing of them took him up a conſiderable time, Of his deſcription, *Gmelin* afterwards made uſe in the *Flora Siberica*. He has regretted nothing ſo much, as that no more time was allowed him to look about on the *American* coaſt;

* *Sphondilium foliolis pinnatifidis.* Linn. Hort Cliff. 103.

† A board with ſeveral holes in it, and a ſtick, the one end of which is put into the holes, and the other turned about ſwiftly between the hands, till the wood within the holes begins to burn, where there is tinder ready, which catches the fire, and communicates it farther.

as

as his whole ſtay laſted but ſix hours, for as ſoon as they had taken in freſh water, he was obliged to return on board.

The ſailors, who had fetched the water, related that they had met with two fire places, where a fire had been juſt before made, they alſo found hewn wood, and obſerved the ſteps of men in the graſs, that they had ſeen five red foxes, which went along quite tame, being not in the leaſt afraid of them. They brought ſmoaked fiſhes with them on board, that appeared like large carp, and taſted very well, and had alſo found a hut thrown up of earth, which perhaps is the ſame as what *Steller* called a cellar.

Having laid in a ſufficient proviſion of water, they were willing to ſhew the *Americans* that they had had no reaſon to become fugitives from their unknown gueſts. Some preſents were ordered to be left for them on ſhore; *viz.* a piece of green glazed linnen, two iron kettles, two knives, twenty large beads of glaſs, two iron *Chineſe* tobacco-pipes, and one pound of *Tſcherkaſſian* tobacco leaves. Theſe things were thought to be according to the taſte of theſe people, and were carried into the above huts.

The next day, *viz.* the 21ſt of *July*, it was determined to put to ſea again, but it was alſo reſolved before their departure for *Awatſcha*, to take the courſe along the coaſts as far as 65 deg. N. lat. but they could get no farther to the North, and were even obliged to ſail continually more and more to the Southward, becauſe the coaſts extended South Weſt. At the ſame time they met with continual hindrances from the many iſlands which were very cloſe together, almoſt every where about the continent. When they thought to ſail moſt ſecure, land was diſcovered a head, and on both ſides, wherefore they were obliged ſeveral times to turn back, and ſeek another freer paſſage. Sometimes it came to paſs, that in the night with the ſame wind and weather, they at one time ſailed in a boiſterous ſea, and at another in calm water, and a few hours after found themſelves again between large waves, where they could hardly govern the ſhip. What elſe could this indicate, than that in the calm they had ſailed in ſheltered water, between iſlands which the darkneſs of the night did not permit them to diſcover.

Some days paſſed without their ſeeing any land, when, on the 27th of *July*, about midnight, they came into 20 fathom water. They could not know whether it was a ſand-bank, or whether they were near to the continent, or an iſland; for it was quite dark. They ſtill found leſs water, but durſt not venture to come to an anchor as the wind

wind was ſtrong, and the waves high. Moreover it was to be feared that they might be either too far from the ſhore, or too near it. At laſt it was concluded to hazard ſailing to the South, in which they ſucceeded ſo well, that, after ſteering ſome hours longer in 20 fathoms water, they regained a ſecure ſea.

They diſcovered an iſland, on the 30th of *July*, in foggy weather, which they called *Tumannoi Oſtrog*, that is, the *Foggy Iſland*, where they came to anchor in 7 or 8 fathom water. But when it began to clear up, they found themſelves a Werſt from it. The whole month of *Auguſt* elapſed with the like occurrences; when the ſhip's crew began to be much affected with the ſcurvy, particularly the Commodore.

Their freſh water beginning now to be reduced to a ſmall quantity, they ran, on the 29th of *Auguſt*, to the North, and again diſcovered the continent, with a multitude of iſlands before it, between which they anchored. Theſe iſlands, ſituated in 55 deg. 25 min. North lat. were called the *Schumagins* iſlands, after the name of the firſt of the ſhip's company, who died in the voyage, and was buried there. On the 30th of *Auguſt* the pilot *Andrew Heſſelberg* was ſent to one of the largeſt iſlands, in ſearch of freſh water. He did not ſtay long before he brought two ſamples of water, which, though they were found to be not very good, being of a brackiſh taſte, yet as there was no time to loſe, they thought it was better to have ſome of this water than none at all, as it might at leaſt ſerve for boiling, while what they had ſtill left, being uſed ſparingly, might hold out for drinking. *Steller* afterwards attributed to this water the ſcurvy and other diſtempers which prevailed among the ſailors.

The ſhip did not lay very ſecure, being expoſed to all the Southerly winds, and to the North they had nothing but rocks and cliffs before them; wherefore they would not venture to ſtay long at anchor in this place; but as, in the night before, a fire had been ſeen on a ſmall iſland toward the N.N.E. while the yawls were gone for water, they ſent *Chitrow* in the ſmall boat, with five men, among whom was a *Tſchuktſchian* interpreter; they were all well armed, and had ſome trifles given them to diſtribute among the inhabitants if they ſhould find any, On the 30th of *Auguſt*, about noon, they got to the iſland, which was computed to be about ſix leagues diſtant from the ſhip; the fires were ſtill to be ſeen, but the people were gone. In the afternoon *Chitrow* intended to return to the ſhip, but a ſtrong contrary wind drove them on another iſland, and detained them till the 2d of *September*, when the ſtorm ceaſed. As *Chitrow* did not return the ſame day,

day, the large boat was ſent for him next morning, and found that the ſmall boat had received ſo much damage, when ſhe was thrown on ſhore by the waves, that they could not venture with her to ſea again ; ſhe was therefore left on the iſland, and he came back in the large boat.

Diſpoſitions were immediately made to weigh anchor, and put to ſea again ; they could not however advance much, becauſe of the ſtrong contrary winds, but were again forced towards the evening to ſeek out for a place of ſecurity between the iſlands. On the 4th of *September* it was the ſame ; they however ſet ſail, but the continual vehement contrary wind forced them back to their former anchoring place, and during the night there was a violent ſtorm.

The next morning they heard on one of the iſlands a loud cry of men, and obſerved fire burning. Soon after two *Americans* came rowing towards the ſhip, in two canoes, ſhaped like thoſe uſed by the ſavages in *Greenland*, and *Davis*'s ſtreights, but they ſtopped at ſome diſtance. The calumets uſed by the *North American* nations to expreſs their peaceable ſentiments were known ; and theſe people were obſerved to have them ; they were ſticks with hawks wings tied to one end, and they ſeemed as well by words as geſtures, to invite our mariners on ſhore ; as, on the other hand, theſe latter by beckoning and throwing preſents to them to invite them to the ſhip ; the *Americans* would not be perſuaded, but turned back to their iſland.

It was reſolved to pay them a viſit on ſhore, Lieutenant *Waxel*, accompanied by nine men, all well provided with arms, went to the iſland. Our people tried firſt to induce the *Americans* (nine of whom ſtood on the ſhore) to come to them in the boat, by a friendly behaviour, and offering of various preſents ; but as this proved fruitleſs, and the *Americans*, on their part, invited the *Ruſſians* to go on ſhore, *Waxel* ordered three men of his company to debark, among whom was a *Tſchuktſchian*, or *Korjak* interpreter, and to faſten the boat with a rope to the ſtones, at ſome diſtance from the ſhore. It has been obſerved every where that the *Tſchuktſchian* and *Korjak* interpreters did not underſtand the language of theſe people ; but they were nevertheleſs very ſerviceable, as conductors, being bold, and looked upon by the *Americans* as the ſame with themſelves. The whole converſation conſequently conſiſted here merely in geſtures and ſigns, by which, on both ſides, they ſhewed great good will. The *Americans* had a mind to regale the *Ruſſians*, and gave them whale's fleſh, as the only proviſion they had. It ſeems they were there only on account of the whale fiſhery ; for our people obſerved, on the ſhore, as many canoes

as

as there were men, but neither huts nor women; from whence 'tis to be concluded that their habitations were on the continent.

The canoes were ſhaped like thoſe that had been ſeen before, and only large enough to hold one man: In the middle there is a round opening, in which the *American* ſeats himſelf, and ties the leather ſo faſt to his body, that not a drop of water can penetrate into the canoe.

No bows and arrows, nor any other weapon, were ſeen among theſe *Americans* to give our *Ruſſians* any uneaſineſs, therefore they ſtayed pretty long on ſhore, and went about with the *Americans*, yet not ſo far as to loſe ſight of their boats, as they were ordered.

In the mean while one of the *Americans* had the courage to come to Lieutenant *Waxel* in the boat; he ſeemed to be the oldeſt and of the moſt importance. *Waxel* preſented to him a cup of brandy, but this was a liquor quite unknown and diſagreeable to him; he ſpit the brandy out again as ſoon as he had taſted it, and cried aloud, as if he was complaining to his countrymen how ill he had been uſed. He would by no means be appeaſed; needles, glaſs beads, an iron kettle, tobacco-pipes, *&c.* were offered him, but he accepted of nothing; he only deſired to return to the iſland, and it was not thought proper to detain him. *Waxel*, on his part alſo, called to his people that were on ſhore, to come back.

This the *Americans* did not like; they made an attempt to keep all three with them; at laſt they let the two *Ruſſians* go, but kept the interpreter. Some of them laid hold of the rope with which the ſhip's boat was faſtened to the ſhore, and pulled as hard as they could, probably thinking that it might be drawn on ſhore as eaſily as their ſmall canoes; to prevent which *Waxel* ordered the rope to be cut. The interpreter called out to them not to abandon him; but talking and making ſigns from the boat to let him go was all to no purpoſe, the *Americans* perſiſted in detaining him; wherefore *Waxel* diſcharged two blunderbuſſes, which, as it was merely done with a deſign to frighten them, had the deſired effect; for the unuſual noiſe of the report being greatly increaſed by the echo from a neighbouring mountain, ſo amazed the *Americans* that they fell flat on the ground, and the interpreter, taking the advantage of their ſurpriſe, made his eſcape to the boat; they, however, ſoon after recovered themſelves, and by their geſtures and noiſe expreſſed their diſcontent, ſeeming to indicate that no body ſhould again come on ſhore. The night now approached, it was ſtormy weather, and the ſhip lay at two Werſts diſtance from

the boat; wherefore *Waxel* did not think it adviſeable to try theſe people further.

I have ſaid before, that no bows and arrows were obſerved at that time among the *Americans*; but this does not prove that they uſe none, but only ſerves to confirm the opinion that they were then out on the whale fiſhery, in which ſuch arms were of no ſervice. One of them had a knife hanging by his ſide, of which our people took particular notice, on account of its unuſual make, but they could not conjecture what uſe it was intended for. Their upper garment was made of whales guts, their breeches of ſeal-ſkins, and their caps of the ſkins of ſea-lions, (in *Kamtſchatka* called *ſwoutſcha)* theſe were adorned with various feathers, eſpecially thoſe of hawks. They had their noſes ſtopt with graſs, which ſometimes they took out, when a great deal of matter iſſued out, which they licked up with their tongues; ſome had their faces painted red, and ſome of various colours; their features were different, like the *Europeans*; ſome had flat noſes, as the *Calmucks*, and they all were of pretty good ſtature. It is probable that they chiefly feed on the ſea animals, which are caught in thoſe parts, ſuch as whales, ſea-lions, bears, ſea-beavers, or rather ſea-otters, and ſeals. They were obſerved likewiſe to eat roots which they dug out of the ground, and ſcarce ſhaked off the earth before they eat them.

There is nothing farther worth the mentioning here, except that a certain perſon maintains that he made himſelf underſtood, in ſome meaſure, by the liſt of words, which *La Hontan* has ſubjoined to his deſcription of *North America*. For having pronounced according to the ſaid liſt the words *water*, or *wood*, the people had pointed to ſuch parts where theſe things were found; but I rather think this might have happened through chance, or perhaps the geſtures which accompanied the words might have contributed to render them intelligible; for *La Hontan* is not to be placed among the conſcientious and credible writers of travels. But, ſetting this aſide, the diſtance between the countries is too great for one and the ſame language to be ſpoken in each, not to maintain that an *European*, particularly a *Frenchman*, can hardly conceive and write the words of ſuch a language in ſuch a manner as to be intelligible to another nation that ſpeaks nearly the ſame language.

Lieut. *Waxel* returned to the ſhip, and the next morning prepared for his departure, when ſeven of the *Americans*, whom he had left the day before, appeared in ſeparate canoes, and approached near to the veſſel. Two of them roſe up in the canoes, laid hold of the rope ladders

ladders of the ſhip, and delivered as preſents two of their caps, together with the image of a man carved out of bone, which we imagined to be an idol. The Calumet, the uſual mark of peace, was again offered; it conſiſted of a ſtick five feet long; to the upper and inner part of which were tied many ſorts of feathers without the leaſt order. Whence we ſee that the ſimilitude of the Calumet to *Mercury*'s ſtaff, as repreſented by the *American* travellers, is not eſſentially neceſſary. Preſents were reciprocally made, and they would certainly have come aboard, if the wind had not began to riſe, which obliged them to return to the ſhore with all expedition. After their return to land, they aſſembled in a cluſter, and made a great noiſe, which laſted almoſt a quarter of an hour. Our people ſet ſail ſoon after, and as they paſſed the iſland on which the *Americans* were, theſe again began to make as great a noiſe as ever they could, which may as well be taken for a token of friendſhip, whereby they intended to expreſs their wiſhing them a happy voyage, as their rejoicing at getting rid of their ſtrange gueſts. They ſteered for the moſt part Southerly, to get clear of the coaſt, and indeed could keep no other courſe, the wind blowing W. and W.S.W. From this time till late in autumn, when the voyage was finiſhed, the wind ſeldom changed, but generally kept between W. S. W. and W. N. W. ſo that there is reaſon to believe, that, at this time of the year, the Weſterly winds blew almoſt continually in thoſe parts. When the Eaſterly gale ſometimes aroſe, it did not laſt above a few hours, and then ſhifted round to the Weſtward again. This was a great hindrance to them in their return; beſides the weather was contiually ſo foggy, that ſometimes for two or three weeks together they never ſaw the ſun nor any ſtar by which obſervations of the latitude could be obtained, and conſequently, the ſhip's reckoning could not be corrected. What inquietude this muſt have cauſed in our navigators, who were thus ſteering in an unknown ſea, with long uncertainty, may be beſt conceived from the words of an officer, who was with them, and expreſſed himſelf in his relation of this voyage, in the following manner: "I do not "know whether there can be a more diſcontented and worſe manner "of living in the world, than to navigate an undeſcribed ſea: I "ſpeak from experience, and can ſay with truth, that during the five "months I was in this voyage, without ſeeing any land known before, "I never ſlept quietly, becauſe I was in continual danger and uncer-"tainty."

They had moſtly contrary winds and ſtorms, till the 24th of *September*, when they ſaw land again, which conſiſted of very high mountains, with many iſlands lying before them at a great diſtance. Here they computed that they were in 51 deg. 27 min. N. lat. and 21 deg. 39 min. long. from the harbour of St *Peter* and *Paul* at *Awatſcha*. As it was the day of the conception of St *John* the Baptiſt, one of the higheſt mountains on the coaſt was named St *John*'s mountain. Afterwards to determine the ſituation of the coaſt more exactly, it was ſuppoſed to be in the latitude of 52 deg. 30 min. which, however, is contradicted by Capt. *Tſchirikow*'s account, who had alſo been on this coaſt, and placed it in 51 deg. 12 min. as is mentioned hereafter.

Nothing farther happened here, ſince they durſt not approach the coaſt, on account of a ſtrong South wind; for it was thought more adviſeable to haul their wind, which ſoon after changed to a violent ſtorm from the Weſt, and drove the ſhip very far towards the S. E. The ſtorm continued without interruption for 17 days, of which we can find but few inſtances, for the pilot *Andrew Haſſelberg*, a man who had been in the ſea ſervice 50 years, in ſeveral parts of the world, declared that he had never ſeen ſuch a long continued ſtorm in his life. They, in the mean while, carried as few ſails as they could, to prevent their running too far to the Southward; but how far they were driven back, may, in ſome meaſure, be concluded by their finding themſelves, on the 12th of *October*, when the ſtorm abated, in 48 deg. 18 min. N. lat. This is to be underſtood according to the ſhip's reckoning; for the continual dark weather would not permit their making any obſervations.

Many of the ſhip's crew had been before this taken ſick, but now the ſcurvy began to break out more and more; ſeldom a day paſſed without ſome of them dying, and ſcarce ſo many retained their health as were neceſſary to govern the ſhip.

In theſe circumſtances it was difficult to determine, whether they ſhould endeavour to return to *Kamtſchatka*, or ſeek a harbour ſome where on the *American* coaſt. This latter the general ſickneſs, the late ſeaſon, the want of freſh water, and the very great diſtance from the harbour of St *Peter* and *Paul*, ſeemed to require, but in a council of the officers, the firſt was reſolved upon, and the wind ſpringing up favourable, they again ſailed North, and from the 15th of *October* towards the Weſt. They paſſed by an iſland, which they ought to have ſeen in their going out, according to the courſe of the ſhip, as deſcribed in the map, nay *Steller* has mentioned, in one account, that land

land had been ſeen in theſe parts, in the outward bound voyage, but the ſhip's journals contain nothing of it, and it is difficult to believe, that they would have ſought ſo far for the land, had they found it before ſo much nearer. The miſtake may rather have happened in deſcribing the courſe on the map, an error, which, in an unknown ſea, may eaſily have happened, or the iſland, in going out, might be concealed by a fog. This iſland was called after St *Macarius*, and the others that followed towards the Weſt obtained the names of St. *Stephen*, St. *Theodore*, and St. *Abraham*.

On the 29th and 30th of *October*, they made two iſlands which they left without names, as according to their ſituation, ſize, and other exterior appearances, they reſembled the two firſt *Kurilian* iſlands, for which they were taken, and therefore they bent their courſe to the North, but had they continued to ſteer to the Weſt only two days longer, they would have made the harbour of *Awatſcha*. I therefore call theſe iſlands the [*Iſles de la Seduction*] *Seducing Iſlands*, but the ſeduction which they occaſioned was of fatal conſequence.

As the long wiſhed for coaſt of *Kamtſchatka* did not appear towards the Weſt, they had then no hopes of a harbour, and the men, notwithſtanding their want, miſery, and ſickneſs, were obliged to work continually in the cold and wet, which drove every one to deſpair; and the ſickneſs was ſo dreadful that the two ſailors, who governed the rudder, were obliged to be led to it by two others who could hardly walk. And when one could ſet and ſteer no longer, another in little better condition, ſupplied his place. They durſt not carry much ſail, becauſe there was nobody to lower them in caſe of need, and indeed they were ſo thin and rotten that a violent wind would have torn them to pieces, and they were not in a condition either to repair them, or make others, for want of hands.

The continual rains now began to change into hail and ſnow; the nights grew longer and darker, they knew not in what latitude they were, or how far from *Kamtſchatka*. When at laſt land appeared about eight o'clock in the morning, to the great joy of the whole.

They immediately made ſail for it, but it was yet at a great diſtance: For, in the beginning, they had only diſcerned the tops of the mountains, which were covered with ſnow, and before they could get near enough in, the night began to come on, during which it was more adviſable to keep the ſea, that they might not endanger the veſſel.

The next morning they found that moſt of the rigging on the ſtarboard ſide of the ſhip was damaged; nothing more was wanting to compleat

compleat their misfortunes; for the people were now so weakened by sickness, that they were not able to remedy this disaster.

Lieut. *Waxel* who gave intelligence of it to the Commodore, received orders to call all the officers together, to consult what was best to be done. A council was held, wherein the immediate danger of their present situation was taken into consideration; the ship was now rendered unfit for farther navigation, on account of the deficiency of her tackle. The want of water, and the sickness among the ship's crew increased; for, as the continual wet had before caused a great inconvenience, they now became the more sensible of the cold, and the late season promised no mitigation, but rather threatened an increase thereof. All this considered, the result was, that they should endeavour to make the land they had seen, and, if possible, preserve the ship, but in case that was not practicable, they might at least save their lives, and commit their future fate to providence.

They immediately steered towards the land; the wind was Northerly, and they sailed W. S. W. and S. W. They sounded, and found by the lead 37 fathoms water, and a sandy ground. At five o'clock in the evening, they were, by the lead, in 12 fathoms water, having the same ground. Here they cast out one anchor, veering out three quarters of the cable, which, at six o'clock, tore in pieces. Vast waves drove the ship on a rock, which she touched twice, notwithstanding they found by the lead, 5 fathoms water; at the same time the waves broke over the ship several times, with such vehemence, that they feared she would go to pieces; they then let go the second anchor, the cable of which was broke before they observed that the anchor had taken ground.

A high sea at last threw the vessel on the other side of the rock, when they were just about getting ready another anchor. And all at once they got into still water, anchoring in a depth of 4 fathoms and a half in sandy ground, about 300 fathoms from the shore.

As they were obliged to take up their winter quarters here, the first care was to look about on shore, and choose the most convenient place for it. As the ship's company was quite weak, they rested a little till noon, when they hoisted out the boat, but not without a great deal of difficulty. On the 6th of *November*, at one o'clock, Lieutenant *Waxel*, and Adjunctus *Steller* went on shore, which they found quite covered over with snow. A brook running from the mountains, and falling into the sea, not far from the landing place, was not yet frozen, and proved to be clear wholesome water; but no

wood

wood was ſeen, nay, not ſo much as fire-wood, except what was thrown on ſhore by the ſea, and even that was already covered with ſnow, and not eaſily to be found. They could neither build houſes or barracks to ſhelter their ſick, neither knew they how to defend themſelves againſt the cold: But neceſſity, the mother of invention, pointed out to them many ſandy hills, near the brook juſt mentioned, between which were pretty deep ditches; theſe they reſolved to clear towards the bottom, and cover them with ſails, being the only habitations they could procure to dwell in, at leaſt till they ſhould be provided with wood thrown on ſhore ſufficient to build huts, however indifferent they might be. Towards the evening, *Waxel* and *Steller* returned to the ſhip, and gave an account to the Commodore of what they had ſeen.

It was concluded to ſend on ſhore the next morning as many men as were yet able to ſtand on their legs, to prepare firſt of all as conveniently as poſſible a ditch between the ſaid hills, for the reception of the ſick. The 8th of *November*, a beginning was made to land the ſick, but ſome died as ſoon as they were brought from between decks into the open air, others during the time they were on the deck, ſome in the boat, and many more as ſoon as they were brought on ſhore.

The ſtone foxes, of which a great many harboured in this place, were obſerved to fall very eagerly upon the corpſe. It was thought that they had never been ſcared by men, nor had ever ſeen any before thoſe that now for the firſt time ſet foot on this land; for they were not in the leaſt afraid of them, and did not run away when any body approached them. It required ſome trouble to keep them from the dead bodies; this circumſtance gave occaſion already to ſuppoſe this to be an iſland, as it afterwards proved.

On the 9th of *November*, Commodore *Bering* was brought on ſhore, being carried by four men on a hand-barrow, which conſiſted of two poles, bound round with ropes, and well ſecured from the open air. They continued to bring their ſick on ſhore, ſome of whom died every day; none of thoſe recovered who were confined to their beds on board; theſe were chiefly ſuch as by indifference and faint-heartedneſs had much contributed to the increaſe of the diſeaſe.

This diſtemper begins with a weakneſs over the whole body, and renders the patient heavy and averſe to all buſineſs; is attended with a dejection of mind, and by degrees cauſes a ſhortneſs of breath on the leaſt exerciſe; ſo that thoſe who are affected with it chooſe rather to lay down than to walk; but this is the patient's deſtruction; for it

is

is followed by a pain in all the limbs, the feet begin to ſwell, the face grows quite yellow, and the body is covered with blue ſpots; the mouth and the gums bleed, and all the teeth grow looſe; then the patient commonly does not care to ſtir, but becomes quite indifferent with regard to life or death. Theſe ſeveral degrees of the ſickneſs, and their effects, were gradually ſeen on board the ſhip. Some of the patients were obſerved to be ſubject to a fearful anxiety, and the leaſt noiſe (which on board of a ſhip is unavoidable) put them in a fright; notwithſtanding which, many eat their victuals with a good appetite, not thinking themſelves ſo ill as in reality they were; for, when orders were given to land the ſick, they very chearfully put on their cloaths, and believed they ſhould now be ſpeedily cured; but, as ſoon as they got from their couch (which was in a lower part of the veſſel) and came upon deck into the open air, they died.

Thoſe alone were beſt off that did not ſuffer themſelves to be conquered by the diſtemper ſo far as to keep their bed conſtantly, but ſtrove to remain on their legs, and to exerciſe, as much as poſſible; and alſo ſuch whoſe lively diſpoſition prevented them from deſpair. Such among them were of great ſervice to the others, as well by their example as perſuaſion. This has been obſerved in particular among the officers, who, being continually employed in affairs relating to the command, in order to take care that nothing might be neglected, were obliged to ſpend moſt of their time upon the deck, and had always a great deal of exerciſe.

But the Commodore did not avail himſelf of this remedy; for his age, and the diſpoſition of his body, were the cauſe of his being inclined more to reſt than to exerciſe. He grew at laſt diffident, and looked upon every one as his enemy, inſomuch that he could not bear even the ſight of *Steller*, for whom he before had ſo great an affection.

*Waxel* and *Chitrow* remained tolerably healthy as long as they were at ſea, and they continued longeſt on board, not only becauſe they would ſee every thing brought on ſhore, but becauſe they alſo had more conveniency in the ſhip. But in a few days they likewiſe grew ſo ſick, that, on the 21ſt of *November*, they were carried on ſhore like the reſt. Experience having taught them how to behave in going out of the ſhip, and in entering in the free air, the patients were carefully wrapt up, and not ſuffered to partake of the open air, by a free tranſpiration, till by degrees they had been uſed to it. Theſe two officers were afterwards reſtored to health.

Com-

Commodore *Bering* died on the 8th of *December*, and had the honour to have the iſland called *Bering's Iſland*, after his name. He was a *Dane* by birth, and had, in his youth, made voyages to the *Eaſt* and *Weſt Indies*, when the great encouragement given by the Emperor *Peter the Great* for the marine ſervice, tempted him to ſeek his fortune in *Ruſſia*. I have ſomewhere met with it, that, in the year 1707, he was Lieutenant, and, in 1710, Captain-lieutenant in the *Ruſſian* fleet. When he was made a Captain I cannot exactly determine. Having thus ſerved in the *Cronſtadt* fleet from its beginning, and been in all the expeditions by ſea, in the war with the *Swedes*, he joined to the capacity requiſite for his office, a long experience, which made him particularly worthy of being employed on ſo important a ſervice, as was the diſcoveries wherewith he had been twice intruſted. It is a pity that it was his fate to end his life in ſuch an unfortunate manner. He may be ſaid to have been buried half alive; for the ſand rolling down continually from the ſide of the ditch in which he lay, and covering his feet, he at laſt would not ſuffer it to be removed, and ſaid, that he felt ſome warmth from it, which otherwiſe he ſhould want in the remaining parts of his body, and thus the ſand increaſed to his belly; ſo that after his deceaſe they were obliged to ſcrape him out of the ground, in order to inter him in a proper manner.

On the 27th of *July*, Captain *Tſchirikow* ſailed on his return from the *American* coaſt, and ſuffered almoſt the ſame accidents as the Commodore; meeting with contrary winds, and other impediments from the coaſts and iſlands, which they greatly lamented not to have had the good fortune to diſcover in their outward paſſage. Nay, he had one ſtill greater inconveniency than the Commodore, which was, that he could not provide himſelf with freſh water, on account of the loſs of his two boats.

He arrived, on the 20th of *September*, in 51 deg. 12 min. North lat. on a coaſt, which they ſuppoſe to have been the ſame that the Commodore alſo arrived at four days after. This coaſt was ſurrounded with rocks, the tops of which reached above the water, ſo that they were obliged to take all imaginable pains to eſcape a danger that, on a nearer approach, would have been unavoidable. They found themſelves obliged to anchor at 200 fathoms diſtance from it. Twenty-one of the inhabitants of the country came rowing, every one in his leather canoe, with a friendly mien, as if they intended to aſſiſt our people, and full of aſtoniſhment about the ſhip, which they gazed at with admiration. But no body could ſpeak with them, neither durſt our ſhip tarry, becauſe the cable was torn to pieces by the rocks, and

the crew were forced to endeavour to regain the open ſea; but altho' they ſucceeded therein, it was but of little advantage to the paſſage, becauſe of the contrary winds.

The freſh water beginning to decreaſe, they thought to ſupply themſelves by diſtilling the ſea-water; and indeed they did thereby deprive it of its ſalt, but the bitterneſs remained. In the mean time, nothing elſe was to be done than to mix this diſtilled ſea-water with an equal part of the remaining freſh water, which they diſtributed in ſmall portions, to make it go the farther. How great was their joy when, in this diſtreſs, it rained! for then they refreſhed themſelves with the rain-water that they had gathered, and its being preſſed out of the ſails gave them no averſion to it.

One may eaſily conceive that this circumſtance muſt increaſe the ſcurvy on board of *Tſchirikow*'s ſhip, whereby many were ſwept away. The Captain himſelf lay continually ſick, from the 20th of *September*. At laſt, on the 8th of *October*, they came in ſight of the land of *Kamtſchatka*, and on the 9th entered the bay of *Awatſcha*. On the 10th, *De la Croyere*, who had alſo been lingering for a long while, was impatient to go on ſhore, but he fell down dead when he came upon deck. Of 70 men, which was the whole number of the ſhip's company, there remained only 49 alive. The pilot, *Jelagin*, who was the only officer that continued healthy, brought the ſhip back into the harbour of St *Peter* and *Paul* on the 11th, after ſhe had ſpent in this voyage above four months.

In the following ſpring, Captain *Tſchirikow*, who by that time was recovered from his ſickneſs, cruiſed about in the ſea, in hopes of meeting with the Commodore, and then ſailed to *Ochotzk*, from whence he travelled to *Jakutzk*, where he expected to receive orders from *Peterſburg* how to proceed. He was obliged to make ſome ſtay at *Jeniſeiſk*. On his return to *Peterſburg*, he was appointed Commodore, but died ſoon after.

But let us return to *Bering's Iſland*; where, a little before the death of the Captain, the company had the misfortune to loſe their chief comfort and hopes, the only means by which, in their opinion, they could be delivered out of their diſtreſs; I mean the veſſel. She rode at anchor, as we have ſeen already, in the open ſea; not a ſoul was left on board to guard her, as the few people that were able to ſtand on their legs, were employed in attending the ſick, and other buſineſs. A violent ſtorm ariſing from E. S. E. in the night between the 28th and 29th of *November*, the cable was tore to pieces, and the ſhip drove on ſhore, not far from the place where our people lay in the ditches,

ditches, and ſettled in the ſand from 8 to 9 feet, the bottom and ſides muſt at the ſame time have been very much damaged: For it was obſerved, that with the flood the ſea water penetrated into her from below, but with the ebb ran out again. By this means moſt of their meal and ſalt was loſt, as the chief of their proviſions were on board; and, although at low water a good deal was ſaved, yet it had ſuffered much damage; it was very fortunate that the ſhip was caſt on ſhore, and not driven out to ſea; for, in the laſt caſe, theſe poor people muſt have been obliged to abide, as long as they lived, on this deſert iſland, which afforded no timber for them to have built another veſſel. But there were now hopes left, that, though the ſhip itſelf could not be refitted for ſervice, they might, with her materials, conſtruct a new veſſel ſufficient for their return to *Kamtſchatka*. They now therefore ſubmitted to their fate with patience, and endeavoured to preſerve their lives as long as poſſible; for which purpoſe the following diſpoſitions were made.

In the firſt place, it was neceſſary to ſearch the country in order to diſcover whether it was a continent or iſland; for of this they could not be certain in the beginning. Rocky mountains were ſeen, which ſeemed to indicate the firſt; and, indeed, this iſland may have been formerly a part of the continent, though perhaps ſeparated from it by earthquakes. They wanted to know whether any inhabitants were to be found, from whom they could get aſſiſtance. It was of importance to learn whether any foreſt could be diſcovered, and what animals, and other productions of nature the country yielded. People were ſent out towards the North and South, who went as far as the high rocks projecting into the ſea would permit them. Some returned in two, others in three days. Their unanimous account was, that they had no where found ſo much as the veſtiges of men. But they had every where along the coaſt met with many ſea-beavers, *viz.* ſuch as in *Kamtſchatka* are called beavers, but ought properly to be called ſea-otters *; and farther in the country they had ſeen a multitude of ſtone-foxes, both blue and white ones, which were not in the leaſt ſhy of men; from whence they concluded that theſe animals had never ſeen any men before them. After this, others were ſent into the country, who went about 12 or 13 Werſts from the ſhore, and, on a high mountain diſcerned, towards the Weſt, the open ſea, in the ſame manner as it appeared towards the Eaſt. Now they were convinced that they were on an iſland. They could ſee no foreſts, and the floating wood found during the winter was ſcarce

* *Lutra marina Margravii, Braſilienſium Jaga ſ. Carigueibeia.*

ſufficient for firing; for they were obliged to ſeek it from under the ſnow; but, as the ſnow melted, there was no farther want of it, which was a proof that on ſome neighbouring land there muſt be forreſts from whence the wood came floating.

The largeſt breadth of the iſland was computed to be above twenty odd Werſts, but its length, extending from South-Eaſt to North-Weſt, has not been exactly determined. It lies in the ſame direction with the mouth of the river *Kamtſchatka*, and the diſtance between both was reckoned, in the following voyage, to be thirty *German* miles, or ſixty leagues. There are many high mountains and rocks; and in the valleys lying between them there is good freſh water and high graſs. On the banks of the brooks there grew low buſhes of willows, but they were of no uſe, as the branches were not above the thickneſs of a finger. Pains were taken to ſee whether a place could be found where a ſhip might ride ſecure from winds, but they could diſcover none. The flood riſes from ſeven to eight feet. Of land-animals, none have been obſerved except the ſtone-foxes above-mentioned, and of them more blue than white ones; but their hair was not ſo ſoft as that of thoſe in *Siberia*, which may perhaps be owing to the difference of the food and air.

It was reſolved to examine what ſtore of proviſions there was left, and compute how long they would laſt, in order to regulate the diſtribution of the ſhares accordingly. They found the ſtores were ſo much exhauſted, that if they had not been ſupplied with the fleſh of ſea-animals they muſt have all periſhed for want of food: They however loſt thirty perſons, who died on the iſland. Eight hundred pounds of meal were kept in reſerve to be uſed in the next voyage, in caſe they ſhould be ſo happy as to conſtruct another veſſel, in which they might return to *Kamtſchatka*. Here was no reſpect of perſons; officers and men had the ſame portions, and ſo they meſſed together, tho' in ſeparate companies, throughout the ſeveral ditches in which they dwelled. The ſtate of natural liberty and equality of men ſeemed here to be reſtored, and therefore properly no command, according to the preſcribed rules, could have place. For although Lieut. *Waxel* took the command upon himſelf after the deceaſe of the Commodore, yet he did not chuſe to correct any for fear they would be revenged on him in private.

As to the ſea-animals that ſerved them for food, they had none at firſt but the beavers above-mentioned, the meat whereof, eſpecially that of the males, was found inſipid, hard, and as tough as leather; ſo that

that they were obliged to cut it in ſmall pieces before they could chew it. One of theſe beavers may afford from forty to fifty pounds ſolid fleſh. The entrails and guts were moſtly uſed as food by the ſick. *Steller* has exactly deſcribed ſome of theſe ſea-animals, which deſcription is inſerted in the commentaries of the Academy of Sciences. In it he preſcribes the fleſh of the beavers as a remedy againſt the ſcurvy. A great multitude of beavers were killed even when their fleſh was no longer uſed for meat, only on account of their fine ſkins, for every one of which the *Chineſe* on the frontiers at *Kjachta* pay from 80 to 100 rubles. This was ſtill ſome comfort for our ſhip's company, as it afforded a view of gain. They amaſſed near 900 of theſe ſkins, which were divided among them all; but here none had better luck than *Steller*, for being phyſician, many ſkins were given him as preſents, and others he bought of thoſe, who, in an uncertainty whether ever they ſhould return to any place where they could diſpoſe of them, did not value theſe goods. His ſhare alone is ſaid to have amounted to 300 beaver-ſkins, which he brought with him to *Kamtſchatka* and *Siberia*.

It alſo happened, in the beginning of the winter, that a dead whale was thrown on the iſland, which occaſioned great joy among our people, though they were obliged to go five Werſts after it. It was about eight fathoms long, and might perhaps have had floated a pretty while in the ſea, for the fat was already ſomewhat ſouriſh; but this did not hinder our people from making uſe of it. They called the whale their magazine of proviſion, becauſe it was a certain reſource in caſe they ſhould be in want of other animals. The fat was cut in ſmall ſquare pieces, and boiled a long time in water, to extract from it the moſt fluid parts, and the remaining hard and ſinewy parts were ſwallowed unchewed, like the fleſh. In the enſuing ſpring, the ſea threw on ſhore another whale, which was much freſher than the former, and they dreſſed it in the ſame manner.

The beavers diſappeared in the month of *March*, and inſtead of them another animal appeared, called in *Kamtſchatka* a ſea-cat, on account of its long hairs ſtanding out on both ſides of the mouth, as thoſe of the cats. *Dampier* who has deſcribed it, met with many of them in his voyage on the South Sea, and gives it the name of the ſea-bear. The weſtern ſhore of the iſland was in a manner covered by them. Theſe animals keep together in a family-like manner, ſo that a male, who has generally from 15 to 20 females, keeps them and his children along with him, as well by ſea as by land, till they begin

their

their own houſe-keeping. The largeſt weigh from 18 to 20 pouds, that is towards 800 pounds. It is a very ſavage animal, fierce, and difficult to come at; but they killed no more of theſe than was abſolutely neceſſary, for the fleſh has a very loathſome rank taſte, and the ſkin is hardly good for any thing at all, except that of thoſe which are very young, and thoſe taken out of the womb, which are, in ſome meaſure, uſeful as furs. They were moſtly killed a-ſleep, for the old ones, in the ſpring time, ſpend a couple of months in ſleeping, without taking the leaſt food, as the fat bears do in the depth of winter.

It was near the end of the month of *May* before theſe diſappeared, then the ſhip's crew had for ſome time no other ſuſtenance than the large ſeals, which in *Kamtſchatka*, are called *Lachtak*. They are as big as an ox, weighing about 800 pounds a piece, but the fleſh being of a loathſome taſte, it was lucky that ſometimes they could catch ſea-lions, which afforded them better food.

The ſea-lion is the animal, which, in *Kamtſchatka*, is called *Sciwutſcha*. They are as big again as the largeſt ſea-bears, and weigh from 36 to 40 pouds, that is about 1600 pounds; they are diſtinguiſhed from the reſt of the ſea animals, by their ſhort and yellow hair. As theſe purſue the ſea-bears, it may be the reaſon that the latter betake themſelves ſo abundantly to the coaſts; whither the ſea-lions ſeldom reſort. They moſtly poſt themſelves at ſome diſtance from the ſhore, on large ſtones and rocks in the ſea, that, to appearance, have been ſeparated from the continent by earthquakes. Here theſe animals make ſuch a terrible roaring, that they may be heard at three or four Werſts diſtance. All other beaſts flee as ſoon as the ſea-lion appears. Their fierce and grim look beſpeak their ferocity: Wherefore our ſhip's crew unwillingly attacked them. They killed ſeveral of the young ones, the fleſh of which was found particularly ſavoury, and only a few of the old ones as they lay aſleep. *Dampier* deſcribed them before *Steller*. Their ſimilitude to the lion conſiſts merely in long hair ſtanding up, which grows about the neck of the male.

They alſo lived ſometimes upon the fleſh of the animals, which, in the *Ruſſian*, as well as in the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* language, is called the ſea-cow; the *Spaniards* name it *Manati*, and the *French*, *Lamentin*. One would think its ſimilitude with a cow muſt be very great, as it appeared ſo to all different nations and travellers at firſt ſight, when people are uſed to give names to things that were unknown to them before. But this likeneſs conſiſts in nothing elſe than the ſnout, which, probably, they ſaw firſt, and perhaps alone: for it has neither horns

nor

nor ſtreight ears, no feet, nor any thing elſe reſembling a cow. It is an animal like a ſeal, only incomparably larger; has two fins on the fore part of the body, wherewith it ſwims; between them are ſeen two teats in the females, for ſuckling its young ones. This diſpoſition of parts being ſomewhat ſimilar with the human, eſpecially ſince the mother makes uſe of the fins to hold her young ones cloſe to the teats, is the reaſon for the *Spaniſh* name *Manati*, *i. e. the handed animal*; for the *Spaniards* compare the fins to the hands of men. *Lamentin* it was firſt called by the *French*, becauſe it does not cry loud, but in a manner whines and ſighs. *Chriſtopher Columbus* is ſaid to have taken it for the Syren of the ancients. When it ſwims in the ſea, one part of its back ſtands commonly out of the water, which is ſaid to appear like a boat overſet, floating on the ſea. It is not only found in theſe ſeas, but in all others ſurrounding *Aſia*, *Africa*, and *America*, wherefore many travellers, for inſtance, *Lopez*, *Dampier*, *Kolb*, *Atkies*, and *Labat*, have made mention of it; but they contradict one another too frequently, which alſo has occaſioned many miſtakes in the natural hiſtory of *Cluſius*, *Johnſton*, *Rajus*, *Klein*, *Artedi*, *Linnæus*, and others, for the rectifying of all which, *Steller*'s deſcription is hardly ſufficient. A particular ſpecies of theſe animals harbours in the river *Amazon* in *South America*, and an account of it is given by M. *de la Condamine* in his travels.

I return to my deſign, to ſhew how uſeful the *Manati* was to our ſhip's company with reſpect to their ſuſtenance. Some of theſe animals have been caught, which, from the ſnout to the point of the tail, were from three to four fathoms long, and weighed 200 pouds, or 8000 pounds. One was food enough to ſerve for a fortnight, and the fleſh was very ſavoury, like the beſt beef; that of the young ones was like veal. The ſick found themſelves conſiderably better, when, inſtead of the diſagreeable hard fleſh of the beaver, they eat that of the Manati, though it was much more difficult to catch them than the beavers. They never came on the land, but only approached the coaſt to eat ſea-graſs, which grows on the ſhore, or is thrown up by the ſea. This ſort of food may, perhaps, contribute a great deal to give the fleſh a more agreeable taſte than that of the other animals that live on fiſh. The young ones, that weighed 1200 pounds and upwards, remained ſometimes at low water on the dry land between the rocks, which afforded a convenient opportunity for killing them; but the old ones, which were more cautious, and went off at the right time with the ebb, could be caught no otherwiſe than with harpoons,

fixed

fixed to long ropes. Sometimes the ropes were broke, and the animal escaped before it could be struck a second time. This animal was seen as well in the winter as in the summer time. They melted some of the fat, with which, like the hogs, they are covered from three to four inches thick, and used it as butter. Of the flesh, several casks full were pickled for ship's provision, which did excellent service on their return.

The month of *March* 1742 being near concluded, and the ground becoming free from snow, Lieut. *Waxel* called together the remainder of the ship's company, being 45 in number, that they might consult together, and come to some resolution in what manner it was best to return. Here the meanest of the sailors had the same right to give his vote as the commanding officer: After they had all given their various opinions, *Waxel* and *Chitrow* made the proposal to break up the packet-boat, and to build a smaller vessel of her materials, which should be large enough to contain all the company, with sufficient provisions for a fortnight; by which means, those who had been fellow-sufferers might equally partake of the deliverance out of their distress; or if any unforeseen misfortune should happen, they might all remain together, and there would be no room left for reproaching of one another. This was unanimously agreed to, and a writing drawn up, which every one confirmed by signing his name to it. But, nevertheless, a new obstacle arose; for some refused to break up a ship which had been built at the expence of the crown; but these were obliged to yield, being out-voted in a new council. In the beginning of the month of *April* they began to unrig and take to pieces the wreck; a work which lasted the whole month, and at which the officers were always the most assiduous, in order to encourage, by their example, the common men to imitate them.

The greatest difficulty was, who should have the direction of building of the vessel. They wanted a ship-carpenter; for the three that set out on the voyage had died in the island. Luckily, one *Sawa Starodubzow*, a *Siberian Cossack*, and native of *Krasnojarsk*, who had been formerly employed as a workman in building of ships at *Ochotzk*, offered to take upon him the management of the work, if they would consent to give him his proportion of the vessel. Indeed the *Cossack* kept his work as well as could be wished; and, after his return, had the favour bestowed upon him, for his services, to be made, by the provincial chancery of *Jenisetsk*, a *Simbojarskoi*, which is the lowest degree of the *Siberian* nobility. On the 6th of *May*, a vessel was put

put on the ſtocks, 40 feet long in the keel, 13 feet broad, and ſix feet and half deep; and at the end of the month, all the timbers were ſet in, ſo that in the beginning of *June* they ſet about to plank her as well within as without. A deck was made, and the veſſel provided with a maſt, and eight oars. There was no want of hemp and old tow for careening; but the quantity of tar not being ſufficient, they ſupplied themſelves in the following manner: They took a new cable, which never had been in the water, chopped it to pieces, each piece a foot long, then pulled the threads aſunder, and filled a large copper kettle with them, to which they made a tight cover with a hole in the middle. Then they took a wooden veſſel, which had a cover made in the ſame manner as the former, with a hole in the middle; this was ſtuck into the ground as far as the cover; they ſet the copper kettle upon it upſide down, ſo that one cover and one hole of the one were exactly oppoſite to thoſe of the other. Then ſo much earth was laid about the kettle, that no fire could penetrate to the wooden veſſel: After which, fire was made round about the kettle, the lower part of which did now ſtand up more than half above the earth. The tar contained in the tow melted, and gathered in the wooden veſſel below, by which means they procured as much as was requiſite to tar the lower part of the veſſel. Her upper part was payd over with melted tallow. In the ſame manner they built a canoe, which would hold from eight to ten men: While all this was executing, maſts, ſails, ropes, anchors, water-caſks, and ſea-proviſions were prepared, and every thing put in proper order.

At the end of the month of *July*, nothing elſe was wanting but to make the cradle for launching the veſſel, which was to be 25 fathoms long; for the veſſel could not be put on the ſtocks nearer to the ſea, on account of the tide's flowing up pretty high. On the 10th of *Auguſt* ſhe was launched, and named, after the packet-boat, *St Peter*, out of the wrecks of which veſſel ſhe had been built. She might be called a ſingle maſted hucker; for, according to her rigging, ſhe approached neareſt to this ſort of veſſels. A quantity of cannon-balls, cartridges, and all the iron-work that remained of the former veſſel, ſerved for ballaſt. The maſt was got in, ropes, ſails, and rudder, properly diſpoſed. Happily, the weather was calm, without which they would hardly have ſucceeded. The ſhip lay expoſed to the open ſea, from N. N. W to N. E. If a ſtorm had ariſen, ſhe might eaſily have been ſtranded again on the coaſt. She drew five feet water, and could have carried a greater burthen, but this was ſufficient for the intended purpoſe.

The crew being embarked, they put to sea on the 10th of *August*, towards the evening. The boat belonging to the former ship was taken in tow, only by way of trying whether they could preserve her; if it was not practicable, they resolved to set her adrift. They passed by the rocks and other shallow places that evening, and found from four to nine fathoms water; after which they took to their oars; and when they had got off about four leagues from the shore, a gentle breeze from the North began to spring up, with which they proceeded on their voyage. It is surprizing how well the vessel sailed and worked. Had she been built by an experienced master, she could not have well sailed better. The next day at noon they were in sight of the south-east point of *Bering's Island*, at a distance of four leagues, N. by E. to which they gave the name of *Cape Manati*, from the above-mentioned sea-cows, which herd more here than in any other parts. The North latitude of this cape is 54 deg. 55 min. or about 55 deg. whereas the place where they resided this winter had been observed to be almost in 56 deg. On the 18th of *August*, in the morning, they had a strong contrary wind from the South West; wherefore it was resolved to cut the tow-rope, and set the boat adrift, for fear she should damage the vessel. On the same day, about noon, the vessel began to be very leaky; two pumps were not sufficient to keep her free; they were obliged to use buckets, and throw their heavy goods over-board, in order to lighten the vessel, and discover the leak, which they found out, and stopped so well, that they made use of but one pump, and that not constantly. On the 25th of *August* they came in sight of the land of *Kamtschatka*; the following day they were so happy as to make the bay of *Awatscha*, and on the 27th they entered the harbour of St *Peter* and *Paul*. What exultation this must have caused in our sailors, every one may easily conceive. All the distress and danger to which they had been exposed was now over. They came to a plenteous magazine of provisions, which Capt. *Tschirikow* had left there, They wintered here in commodious dwellings, having first attempted to return to *Ochotzk* in the same autumn, but were prevented by contrary and violent winds. In the mean time, the vessel was cleaned, and put in a condition for another voyage. They set sail again in the month of *May* following, to carry back to *Ochotzk* the whole ship's company. *Waxel* went from the harbour of *Peter* and *Paul* to *Jakutzk*, and having wintered there, proceeded to *Jeniseisk*, where, on his arrival, in *October* 1744, he found Captain *Tschirikow*, who

who had received orders from the Senate to take up his reſidence there, till a reſolution ſhould be taken with reſpect to the proſecuting the *Kamtſchatka* navigations. *Waxel* ſtayed at *Jeniſeiſk*; and when *Tſchirikow* was ordered, in 1745, to *Peterſburg*, *Waxel* took upon him the command of the mariners there, and did not arrive with them at *Peterſburg* till *January* 1749, which time may be fixed as the end of the ſecond *Kamtſchatka* expedition; ſo that it laſted near ſixteen years.

As to the academical company of travellers, *Gmelin* and myſelf arrived at *Peterſburg* on *Feb.* 15, 1743, having paſſed through all the parts of *Siberia*. But *Steller*, who had ſtayed in *Kamtſchatka* after *Waxel*, to make reſearches in natural hiſtory, had not the ſame good fortune. He immerged himſelf without neceſſity, though with a good intention, in matters that did not belong to his department; for which he was called to an account by the provincial chancery at *Jakutzk*, but he vindicated himſelf ſo perfectly, that the vice governor there gave him permiſſion to ſet out on his journey, theſe proceedings were not however ſent to the ſenate at *Peterſburg* ſo ſoon as tranſacted, wherefore they having intelligence of his paſſing through *Tobolſk*, ſent an expreſs to meet him, and carry him back to *Jakutzk*, yet ſoon after advice being received from *Jakutzk*, of his acquital, another expreſs was diſpatched to revoke the firſt order. In the mean time, the firſt expreſs met *Steller* at *Solikamſk*, and had carried him back as far as *Tara*, before the ſecond expreſs overtook him. He then proceeded without delay, on his return for *Peterſburg* by the way of *Tobolſk*, in company with one *Hau* a ſurgeon, who had been with him in the *Kamtſchatka* expedition, but got no farther than *Tumen*, where he died of a fever in *November* 1746. I have thought it neceſſary to relate theſe circumſtances, becauſe many falſities have been propagated abroad concerning him, nay, even his death has been doubted. He was born on the 10th of *March* 1709, at *Winſheim* in *Franconia*. His induſtry and ingenuity would have been of much greater uſe to the learned world, had it pleaſed divine providence to prolong his life. *Gmelin* returned in the year 1747, to *Tubingen*, his native place, where he died profeſſor of botany and chymiſtry, on the 20th of *May* 1755. The loſs of him is likewiſe not inconſiderable to the republic of the learned; ſince he had not, by far, finiſhed tranſcribing the many obſervations collected by him in *Siberia*. Since that time, nothing farther has been attempted in thoſe ſeas, by eſpecial order from the Empreſs; but ſome private perſons have made ſeveral trips

to *Bering's* and the neighbouring iſles. The catching of beavers in thoſe parts enticed many people to go to them, and they never return without great quantities, which always produced large profits. This has brought conſiderable revenues to the crown, by paying a tenth as toll; wherefore the governors at *Jakutzk*, *Ochotzk*, and in *Kamtſchatka*, have encouraged the merchants and *Promyſchleni*, to carry on the trade; the ſmall hucker *Peter* was left for the uſe of theſe people, to whom it was of great ſervice. Indeed, it muſt be by a veſſel like this, or rather leſs, in which the iſlands ſituated in thoſe parts, are to be approached, and the landing place muſt be free from rocks; the moſt proper would be a ſandy coaſt, that the veſſel might with the flood run in far enough towards the land to remain dry at low water, where ſhe might lie ſafe from danger. Such places are ſaid to have been found only on the Weſt ſide of *Berings* iſland, nor is there any harbour, or bay, round about the whole iſland, where a veſſel may lie at anchor, without fear of being, in ſtormy weather, daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks, or elſe ſtranded.

In 1753, a letter was publiſhed at *Berlin*, entitled, *Lettre d'un Officier de la Marine Ruſſienne à un Seigneur de la Cours*, taking notice of a map publiſhed by M. *de Liſle* at *Paris*, in the year 1752, repreſenting not only the diſcoveries of the *Kamtſchatka* expedition, but even thoſe aſcribed to admiral *de Fonte*, with a printed explanation; the author of this letter found that M. *de Liſle* had very indifferent materials for compoſing his map. He diſcovered in it, and in the explanation, ſeveral errors and untruths, and particularly obſerved in what a groundleſs manner the author would appropriate to himſelf, and to his brother M. *de Liſle de la Croyere*, who died in *Kamtſchatka*, the honour of theſe diſcoveries. All this he proved with great candour. The letter was firſt printed ſingly; and afterwards corrected and inſerted in the 18th Vol. of *Nouvelle Bibliotheque Germanique*. At *London* an *Engliſh* tranſlation of it was publiſhed, with ſome obſervations by Mr *Arthur Dobbs*, the great promoter of the Northern navigation. The annexed map of the new *Kamtſchatka* diſcoveries, lately publiſhed by the academy of ſciencies, was made under my inſpection. Some of the firſt copies have the date 1754, for the map was finiſhed and engraved that year. But I have reviſed and corrected it in ſeveral places, and changed the date to 1758, in which particulars the ſubſequent copies differ from the former. The memoir mentioned in the original title is no other than this treatiſe.

*Siberia*

*Siberia* is copied from a new map of *Siberia*, done by my order, according to the obſervations and deſcriptions made by me in that country, but is not yet engraved. A very great difference will be obſerved between this and the maps of *Siberia* in the *Ruſſian* Atlas.

The coaſts of the frozen ſea are drawn according to the above deſcribed navigation.

I have given a new form to the *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs*, it is a narrow Iſthmus, which has been more than once croſſed on foot from the ſea of *Kolyma*, over to the ſea of *Anadir*. And I think this *Neſs* muſt extend a great way farther beyond the Iſthmus. I am afraid it is repreſented too ſmall yet, for which reaſon the out-line is only marked with points, to ſhew the uncertainty. I might have put iſlands about the *Tſchukotſkoi Noſs*, if the intelligencies received of them were of authority enough to determine their ſituation. As for the iſland *Puchotſkoi*, which is found in the maps publiſhed in *Holland*, after the death of *Peter the Great*, and in that of *Strahlenberg*, the name is quite unknown in *Siberia*, unleſs, inſtead of this, it be called *Tſchukotſkoi*.

*Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, and the courſe of the river *Anadir*, are placed more northerly in this than in the former maps. By following the obſervations made at *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, which is in 66 deg. 9 min. and according to this alſo, the ſituation of the *Penſkinſkian* Bay is regulated. For the diſtance between *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog*, and the mouth of the river *Penſkina*, has been found to be not much above 200 Werſts. And beſides it was neceſſary that the *Penſkinſkian* Bay ſhould extend farther towards the North than in the former maps, on account of the many conſiderable rivers that empty themſelves into it, of which only the principal ones can be pointed out. Theſe coaſts were never before properly deſcribed. It may reaſonably be reckoned a fault in both the *Kamtſchatka* expeditions, not to have taken notice of ſuch occurrences as theſe.

An error has been committed in this map, in determining the ſituation of *Ochotzk*, which proceeded from my not having received the aſtronomical obſervations from *Ochotzk*. But I thought, that according to the menſuration and deſcription of the roads from *Jakutz* to *Ochotzk*, the diſtance between both places, as it is ſet down in the *Ruſſian* Atlas, was two degrees too much in longitude; conſequently I placed *Ochotzk* two degrees more to the Weſtward. After this, I received the obſervations of the true longitude of *Ochotzk*, which is 160 deg. 59 min. 15 ſec. Its latitude 59 deg. 20 min.

Any

Any diſagreement with this, is to be attributed to my following too preciſely my firſt map, where this determination is not made uſe of.

Concerning the coaſt between *Ochotzk* and the river *Amur*, it muſt run not towards the South, as it does in all maps publiſhed hitherto, but from *Ochotzk* as far as the river *Ud*, towards the South-Weſt; and from the river *Ud*, as far as the *Amur*, to the South Eaſt; and in this manner this coaſt is repreſented in the preſent map. At *Udſkoi Oſtrog*, obſervations have been made of the latitude. It has been found at one time 55 deg. 10 min. and at another 55 deg. 27 min. whence a medium of 55 deg. 18 min. is to be concluded on; the reaſon for repreſenting the coaſt in thoſe parts in the aforeſaid manner is, that it agrees better with the meaſured and geometrical diſtance deſcribed between *Jakutzk* and *Udſkoi Oſtrog*, and the multitude of rivers that fall into the ſea, between *Ochotzk* and *Udſkoi Oſtrog*, and with their diſtances communicated by perſons acquainted with thoſe parts: For, if the coaſt from *Ochotzk* runs South Weſt, then the rivers will have more room, and the diſtance between them be more agreeable to truth.

With reſpect to the *Shantarian* Iſlands, they are only in a manner hinted at, in the map, without making the ſituation agree with my deſcription of them, which, though drawn as carefully as poſſible, will hardly correſpond with the truth. For whoſoever navigates this ſea hereafter with attention, will doubtleſs find the ſituation, magnitude, and number of the iſlands quite different. The iſland ſituate oppoſite to the mouth of the river *Amur*, as well as all the coaſts and countries belonging to *China*, being taken from *Du Halde*'s maps, will require no great vindication for miſtakes made in them. But, that the *Chineſe* maps of thoſe parts are not free from errors, may be ſuppoſed, becauſe no *Jeſuit* ever was there; and the Mandarines ſent by *Chan Cang-hi* to deſcribe the iſland, took but little pains about it. Many other diſcoveries might be made there, if a voyage was undertaken for that purpoſe. The many various opinions of geographers about the land, or rather iſland of *Jeſo*, that is ſituated in the middle between *Kamtſchatka* and *Japan*, do not clear up any thing ſatisfactory from the antient diſcoveries; ſince ſome connected this country with *Japan*, others with *America*, or with *Eaſt Tartary*, and by others *Kamtſchatka* was taken for it; then again they made one, and at another time ſeveral iſlands of it. Great credit is given to the account of the ſhip *Caſtricom*, publiſhed in the collection of *Thevenot*,

in

in the third Tom. of *Voyages au Nord*, in Father *Charlevoix*'s *Hiſtoire du Japon*. (Tom. II. p. 494.) but I cannot perſuade myſelf to take it, with M. *Buache*, for deciſive. There is too little of a proper ſea-journal in it, and nothing from which one might conclude that the captain of the ſhip has taken pains to get an exact knowledge of the land he had ſeen, or the ſea in which he ſailed. No computation of the longitude is obſerved, and yet it is not to be believed that the maſter had been neglectful in this reſpect. The courſe of the ſhip *Caſtricom* was moſtly towards the North, and hence moſt maps repreſent *Jeſo* nearly under the ſame meridian with the North coaſt of *Japan*, which is an error that Mr *D'Anville* alone has, in ſome meaſure, corrected in his map of *Aſia*. The account of the ſhip *Breſkes*, which ſailed out at the ſame time with the *Caſtricom*, on the diſcovery of *Jeſo*, contains much exacter obſervations; but they are little known, and therefore have not yet been made uſe of by any geographer; for though it ſeems as if M. *D'Anville* had known ſomething of them, ſince the ſituation he has given the land of *Jeſo*, comes neareſt to that given in the relation of the ſhip *Breſkes*; yet, from other circumſtances, the contrary may be ſuppoſed. M. *D'Anville* truſts much to probabilities; theſe have cauſed him to take *Jeſo*, *Staten Iſland*, and *Company's Iſland*, with the *Jeſoian* Iſlands, from *Japan* to the Iſland *Nadeſchdas*, for one. They have likewiſe, perhaps, miſled him, to connect ſeveral places from the relation of the *Caſtricom*; for inſtance, *Blydenburg*, *Tamari Aniwa*, Cape *Aniwa*, &c. with Eaſt *Tartary*, and to place Cape *Patience*, which is generally eſteemed to be the North point of the iſland *Jeſo*, on the South point of the iſland of *Sachalin Ula*; in which, whether he is right or wrong, cannot eaſily be decided. What information the account of the ſhip *Breſkes*, from *Witzen*, affords, I will inſert, becauſe it is rare: This ſhip, in 1643, ſet ſail in company with the *Caſtricom*, for the diſcovery of *Tartary*, and was ſeparated by a ſtorm from the latter, on the Eaſt coaſt of *Japan*, and diſcovered the land of *Jeſo*. In the month of *June* ſhe ſailed through the Streights, which ſeparate the land of *Jeſo* from *Japan*. In 41 deg. 50 min. North lat. and in 164 deg. 48 min. long. on the point of land which was firſt diſcovered appeared eight or ten rocks, like ſails, and from theſe a great ridge extended a mile into the ſea. They ſaw there ſmall veſſels (*Prawen*) the rowers had in each hand an oar, which they uſed alternately, ſtriking into the water, and went very ſwift; they appeared to be a ſenſible people, had long, black, rough beards, and

were

were of a tawny complexion: On the fore part of their heads, about the breadth of three fingers, they wore long hair; but that on the hind part was cut off. It was remarked, that, in token of gratitude, they folded their hands together over their heads; they were cloathed in bear-ſkins; their weapons were bows and arrows. From thence the ſhip ſailed much to the Eaſtward, and the ſailors caught plenty of cod. In 43 deg. 4 min. North lat. they ſaw land again; in 44 deg. 4 min. lat. veſſels came to the ſhip, whoſe people were ſtrong of body, and ſenſible in converſation; they had women with them, of a brown complexion, and their lips and hands painted blue. Theſe wore their hair round about their heads cut off about three fingers breadth below their ears, and had an aſpect like young men. They took much delight in drinking of brandy; ſome of theſe people alſo wore cloaths after the *Japanneſe* faſhion; others had croſſes on their coats. Beſides bows and arrows, they were alſo armed with ſabres, *(howers)* which are made like thoſe in *Japan*; the hilts of their ſwords were ornamented with ſmall pieces of gold, the blades with ſilver backs, and the ſheaths with foliage. The belts of their ſabres were embroidered with gold; they wore ſilver rings and *Nuremberg* beads in their ears; ſeals and beaver ſkins, and ſome *India* ſtuffs, were ſeen among them; their veſſels were made of hollowed trees. In 43 deg. 45 min. North lat. land was again diſcovered; as alſo in 44 deg. 12 min. lat. and 167 deg. 21 min. long. they ſaw high land, and perceived many iſlands, and the main land. A little more northerly many ſeals were obſerved, and a ſort of graſs floating in the ſea. In 45 deg. 12 min. North lat. and 169 deg. 36 min. long. the land appeared afar off like iſlands; but when they came near it, they found it was a continent covered with ſnow in many places; here they went on ſhore, but the country was deſert. In a valley, not far from the coaſt, there was a brook of clear freſh water, along which they found alſo low ſhrubs, cherry-trees, ſorrel, wild cabbage, leeks, and nettles; they ſaw neither men nor beaſts, except one fox. In 46 deg. 15 min. lat. and 172 deg. 16 min. long. as alſo in 172 deg. 53 min. long. appeared a chain of high mountains. Land was likewiſe diſcovered in 47 deg. 8 min. lat. and 173 deg. 53 min. long. but no foot ſet on it. This land lies, according to the journal of the ſhip *Breſkes*, 12 deg. more eaſterly than the Eaſt point of *Japan*, which is ſituate in 38 deg. 4 min. difference of lat. 9 deg. 38 min. courſe N. E. by E. and S. W. by W.

From whence I conclude, that the ſituation of the pretended land of

of *Jeſo*, is the ſame with the iſlands laid down in this map, and that the latter may, without any inconſiſtency, be put in the place of the former: For neither the navigation of the *Breſkes*, or of the *Caſtricom*, prove that all the land theſe ſhips met with was united; *Matſmey* is taken for one iſland by Meſſ. *de Liſle* and *Buache*, notwithſtanding many accounts, eſpecially thoſe of the Miſſionaries of *Japan*, and even thoſe of the *Caſtricom*, are againſt this opinion. But as ſubmiſſion is already paid in this point, why is not the ſame acknowledgement made in regard to the iſlands *Kunaſchir*, *Urup Figurnoi*, *Ziturnoi*, &c.

The reality of the iſland of *Nedeſcha* is not denied; but if the journals of the *Caſtricom* and the *Breſkes* have any credit, and all the land which they have ſeen, is taken for continent, then this alſo cannot ſtand; which, if we grant them the ſaid navigation, proves too much, and conſequently is not at all concluſive, even for Meſſ. *de Liſle* and *Buache*. Neither is it a proof for them, that the *Europeans* in *Japan* have heard the land of *Jeſo* deſcribed as a large continent. What has been ſaid above, that the inhabitants of all theſe iſlands are called by the *Japanneſe* by one common name of *Jeſo*, may have occaſioned the miſtake; with which, the ſhips *Caſtricom* and *Breſkes* being prejudiced, they believed therefore that all the land they ſaw, was one and the ſame iſland. By this they may have been prevented from making enquiries into the openings and bays obſerved by them, which were probably ſtreights between the iſlands. Thus it is even unneceſſary to call to our aſſiſtance a forced change of places, as has been done above, for the explanation of the preſent ſituation of thoſe parts. *Van Keulen* ſets down in his map, that *Jeſo* is contiguous to *Tartary*, of which hitherto nothing can be ſaid with certainty, though I am ſure that *Jeſo* is certainly divided into iſlands. Such like teſtimonies ſerve at leaſt to ſecure an opinion from being called raſhneſs. The ſame order and names of the iſlands have been retained as they are ſet down in the *Ruſſian* Atlas, according to Captain *Spangberg*'s voyage, without employing any other aſſiſtance. The comparing of theſe accounts with the former, may be of uſe in future enquiries into theſe parts, which it is to be wiſhed will not be left undone, in order to remove all doubt that may remain concerning the land of *Jeſo*. *Japan* is laid out in imitation of Meſſ. *D'Anville* and *Bellin*. It is true, Father *Charlevoix* ſays, that according to a new map corrected after the aſtronomical obſervations of the *Jeſuits* in *China*, this empire lies between 157 and 175 deg. longitude. But

 this

this is an evident error, from whence it would follow that, contrary to experience, ſhips would be obliged to ſail from *Kamtſchatka* to *Japan* directly Southward. My emendations in reſpect to *Kamtſchatka*, may be ſeen by comparing this map with the former. In general, *Kamtſchatka* appears now a good deal longer than before, ſince the *Penſhinſkian* bay takes up a greater extent to the North. The river *Penſhina* emptied itſelf, in the *Kirilowian* map, on the Weſt; and, on the map in the *Ruſſian* Atlas, on the Eaſt ſide into the bay: Here it falls into the Northermoſt corner of it. All the rivers have almoſt got another ſituation, and many of them a corrected orthography too. The moſt remarkable miſtakes were in the rivers *Plutora* and *Tigil* or *Kigil*, the firſt of which was laid out two degrees too far to the South, and the ſecond ſo much too far Northerly. There remained not ſo much as one degree of latitude between the mouths of both; and the difference ought to amount to five degrees. There is no room left here for uncertainty or doubt, as theſe rivers belong to the principal ones of the country; and they are frequently viſited by the inhabitants of both the *Ruſſian Oſtrogs*, on the river *Kamtſchatka*; ſince the road from the river *Penſhina* to the *Tigil*, and from thence to the rivers *Kamtſchatka*, *Bolſchaia reka*, &c. has been deſcribed by ſurveyors; and ſince, laſtly, it is exactly known in *Kamtſchatka* that the rivers which fall into the ſea on either ſide, are oppoſite to one another. People travel from *Anadirſkoi Oſtrog* to the river *Kamtſchatka*, and paſs the river *Olura* half way: conſequently it muſt be in about 61 deg. North lat. for the mouth of the river *Kamtſchatka* is in 56 deg. or ſomething more Northerly. But the mouth of the *Tigil* is known for certain to be in the ſame latitude with the mouth of *Kamtſchatka*. At *Bolcheretſkoi Oſtrog*, and in St *Peter* and *Paul*'s harbour, aſtronomical obſervations have been made, which determined the ſituation of theſe places.

| | Latitude. | Longitude. |
|---|---|---|
| *Bolſcheretſkoi Oſtrog* in | 52 54½ | 174 10 |
| St *Peter* and *Paul*'s harbour | 53 1¾ | 176 12½ |
| Mouth of the *Bolſchaia-reka* | 52 54 | |
| South point of *Kamtſchatka* | 51 3 | |

This may ſuffice at preſent concerning *Kamtſchatka*. As to that part of the map which exhibits the *American* diſcoveries, they are taken from drawings made on board the ſhips, after the beſt reconciliation

ciliation of the different accounts, and therefore I am not anſwerable for it, if, in ſome places, a difference ſhould be obſerved between the deſcription and the map. My work herein has been no more than to connect together, according to probability, by points, the coaſts that had been ſeen in various places, Monſ. *Buache*, who before had taken the coaſt ſeen between 51 and 52 degrees North latitude, and 21 degrees longitude from *Awatſcha* (Monſ. *de Liſle* ſays, miſtakenly, 12 degrees) for a diſtinct and ſeparate country or iſland, has followed this advice in his neweſt maps, and in general has hit the mark pretty well, notwithſtanding ſeveral coaſts, belonging to the connexion, were not known to him. But ſince the caſe may be the ſame here, as that which cauſed us to ſay ſo much on occaſion of *Jeſo*, I mean, an uncertainty whether the land be iſland or continent, prudence requires us not to truſt too much to ſuppoſition, but to leave to future diſcoveries to confirm which of theſe is the real circumſtance in this affair.

I have likewiſe thought proper to connect the *Ruſſian* diſcoveries, after the example of Meſſ. *de Liſle* and *Buache*, with the parts of *America* already known. For this purpoſe it was neceſſary to be directed by a map of *America*, the exactneſs of which cannot be denied. I choſe that of Mr *Green*, it being juſt at hand during the work. According to which, the then known parts of *America* are therein planned. Had ſuch aſtronomical obſervations been taken on board of our ſhips, as were deſigned, the diſtance between the new-diſcovered parts, and thoſe already known before, might have been determined with more certainty: But for want of that, our ſole and only grounds are the ſhip's reckoning, which we ſhall not inſiſt upon, ſuppoſing future navigations may ſhew a difference from the preſent determination. 'Till that ſhall happen, the deciſion of Mr *Dobbs*'s doubt may be deferred; he will not take all for continent that our people have ſeen, except it be confirmed by new diſcoveries. All is, to repreſent a large iſland. Indeed, the hoped-for North Weſt paſſage from *Hudſon's Bay* to the *South Sea*, is rendered more difficult by our opinion, and loſes almoſt its probability. But I have given the grounds, why one may reaſonably ſuppoſe that the continent of *America* extends as far as the neighbourhood of the country of *Tſchuktſchi*. I could wiſh Mr *Dobbs* might be right; *Ruſſia* would loſe nothing by it. Her future poſſeſſions would be the more inconteſtible, ſince no *European* would be able to boaſt of having ever had any knowledge of this great iſland. And, on the other hand, the enterprizes of the *Engliſh*,

with reſpect to finding out the North Weſt paſſage, which certainly is to be wiſhed, for more reaſons than one, might be the more conveniently ſupported. But it ſeems to me, that hitherto the contrary opinion is the moſt probable.

What has been ſaid above, is a ſufficient declaration why the Weſtern Sea of M. *William de Liſle*, and the pretended diſcoveries of Admiral *de Fonte*, have no place here. It is always much better to omit whatever is uncertain, and leave a void ſpace, till future diſcoveries ſhall aſcertain the affair in diſpute.

Finally, I have not taken any notice, either in the map, or in this deſcription, concerning the pertinent account of M. *de Guigne*, which he has collected from *Chineſe* writings, and communicated, in 1752, to the Academy of *Belles Lettres* at *Paris*, and inſerted afterwards in the *Journal des Sçavans* for the month of *December* in the ſame year; becauſe M. *de Gaubil*, at *Peking*, a perſon very converſant in the language and hiſtory of the *Chineſe*, gives no credit to that account; but, on the contrary, believes it to be a mere fiction. The ability and ſincerity of this man cannot be queſtioned, he has given proofs thereof in many writings, which do honour to his country, his order, and our academy, of which he is a member; his judgment therefore muſt be founded on an entire conviction. The love of truth, and my own juſtification, obliges me to inſert Father *Gaubil*'s own words, from his letter of the 23d of *November* 1755, to the illuſtrious preſident of our Academy. *Nous avons vu ici les Cartes de Meſſ. de* Liſle *et* Buache, *ſur les decouvertes des* Ruſſiens *en* Amerique. *Un* François. *nommé Monſ. de* Guignes, *qui etudie la* Chinoiſe *à* Paris, *croit qu'il a decouvert dans les libres* Chinois *un Voyage des* Chinois *de la* Chine *juſqu' à la Californie en* Amerique, *dans l'an de* J. C. 458. *Il a fait graver une Carte de ce Voyage, et a lu la deſſus diverſes Memoires à l'Academie des Inſcriptions et Belles Lettres. Je crois qui ce voyage eſt une fable, et j'ai ecrit à M. de* Guignes *mes raiſons en repondant à une de ſes Lettres ou il me detailloit ſa decouverte.*

" We have ſeen here the maps of Meſſ. *de Liſle* and *Buache*, on the diſcoveries of the *Ruſſians* in *America*. A *Frenchman*, named M. *de Guignes*, who ſtudies the *Chineſe* language at *Paris*, believes he has diſcovered in the *Chineſe* books, a voyage of the *Chineſe* from *China*, as far as *California*, in *America*, in the year of *Jeſus Chriſt* 458. He has had a map engraved of this voyage, and has read divers memoirs before the Academy of Inſcriptions and *Belles Lettres* on that ſubject. I believe that this voyage is a fiction, and I have wrote to M. *de*

one of his
Now, it
s grounds

e see that
yet some-
bring such
of *Russia*,
honour to
rage them
other na-
egulations,
this. A
can deface,
*amtschatka*
y does the
our great

hed by her
of bringing

NDEX.

with respe
to be wish
niently su
opinion is
What h
Western S
Admiral *d*
omit what
veries shall
Finally,
description,
he has coll
to the Acad
the *Journa*
because M
language a
but, on the
and sincerit
thereof in
and our ac
fore must b
and my ow
words, fro
ous preside
*Mess. de* Li
*Un* Françoi
*croit qu'il a*
*la* Chine *ju*
*Il a fait gr*
*moires à P*
*voyage est u*
*pondant à*
" We h
the discove
M. *de* Guig
has discove
*China*, as fa
He has had
moirs befo
subject. I believe that this voyage is a fiction, and I have wrote to
M. *de*

M. *de Guignes* my reaſons for ſo thinking, in my anſwer to one of his letters, wherein he gave me a detail of his diſcovery." Now, it is M. *de Guignes*'s buſineſs to communicate to the world his grounds for ſupporting his opinion againſt Father *Gaubil*.

I beg leave to conclude with a general obſervation: We ſee that the reſult of all is, that although much has been done, yet ſomething ſtill remains to be executed. May we not hope to bring ſuch an important work to perfection? The glorious ſovereigns of *Ruſſia*, in imitation of *Peter the Great*, eſteem it their higheſt honour to promote the ſciences. They endeavour not only to encourage them among their own ſubjects, but they alſo communicate to other nations ſuch improvements as are made therein, by their regulations, and at their own expences. No praiſe is more laſting than this. A Prince hereby erects for himſelf monuments that no time can deface, no accidents deſtroy. Such a monument does the firſt *Kamtſchatka* expedition raiſe for its author *Peter the Great*. Such glory does the ſecond expedition give to the happy reign of *Elizabeth*, our great Empreſs.

This account of the diſcoveries already made, are publiſhed by her order, for the uſe of the whole world, and the hopes of bringing them to perfection.

INDEX.

*Ochotzk*, situation of ——— 109
*Owzin*, Lieutenant, his voyage from the river *Ob* to the river *Jenisei* —— 62

P

*Pawlutzki*, Captain, his expedition againſt the *Tſchuktſchi* 56. Defeats them 56, 57
*Porotowo*, *Alexei*, his depoſition 16
Poud, a *Ruſſian* weight ——— 12
*Promyſhleni*, their voyages from *Kolyma* towards the Eaſt 5. Their account of the iſthmus of *Tſchuktſchi* ——— 6
*Prontſchiſchtſchewo*, Lieutenant, his voyage from *Jakutzk* to *Kamtſchatka* 62. Dies, and is ſucceeded by *Chariton Laptiew* 63
*Puchotſkoi* iſland ——— 109

R

Ruble, a *Ruſſian* coin ——— 12
*Ruſſians*, known to the inhabitants of *Kamtſchatka* before the year 1697, 9. Method of living in the winter at *Nova Zembla* 67

S

Scurvy, deſcription of its effects 95. Exerciſe the beſt remedy for it ——— 96
*Schamaew*, *Iwan*, his depoſition —— 15
*Schantarian* iſlands, account of 40. voyages to ——— ——— 41, 44
*Sheſtakow*, *Alanaſſei*, ordered to proceed againſt the *Tſchuktſchi*, and to make enquiries about the pretended iſland oppoſite to *Kamtſchatka*, as alſo of the *Schantarian* and *Kurilian* iſlands 52. He was to be joined by Captain *Pawlutzki* with 400 *Coſſacs* 53. Sends *Iwan Sheſtakow* to the river *Ud* and coaſt of *Kamtſchatka* 53. Sets out for *Tauiſkoi Oſtrog* 53. Is defeated and ſlain by the *Tſchuktſchi* 54
*Sheſtakow*, *Iwan*, account of his voyage 55
*Schitiki*, a kind of boats, account of
*Schtinnikow*, *Andreas*, chief of ſome *Coſſacs*, his inhuman behaviour to ſome *Japaneſe* 51. Condemned to be hanged for it *ib.*
Sea Cats, deſcription of ——— 101
Sea Cows, or Manati, deſcription of 102
Sea Lion, deſcription of *ib.*
*Serdze Camen*, a mountain, why ſo called 48, 56
*Spangberg*, Captain, ſails from *Ochotzk* to the ſouthward, in company with Lieut. *Walton*, to make diſcoveries of the land of *Japan* 69. Rendezvous at the *Kurilian* iſlands *ib.* Separated from Lieut. *Walton ib.* Comes to an anchor off *Japan* 70. His obſervations during the voyage 72. His account of *Japan* not deemed ſatisfactory at *Petersburg* 76. Ordered to make another voyage thither *ib.* Sails again for *Japan*, but could not proceed on account of the leakineſs of his veſſel 77. His account of *Japan* now deemed authentic, and accepted by geographers 77
*Staduchin*, *Michael*, his voyages in 1644 and 1647, 7. Builds an *Oſtrog* on the river *Kolyma* —— ——— *ib.*
*Staduchin*, *Waſſilei*, his voyage in ſearch of the iſland oppoſite the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka* 18
*Staduchin*, *Taras*, his account of an iſland oppoſite to the river *Penſchina* 14. Remarks thereon ——— ——— 15

T

*Tſchirikow*, Captain, ſails with Commodore *Bering* 82. Separated from him *ib.* Makes the coaſt of *America ib.* Sends ten of his people on ſhore for freſh water 83. Sends another boat to bring the people, as they had not yet returned *ib.* Was at laſt obliged to ſail without them on his return to *Kamtſchatka* 84. Makes the coaſt of *America* again, being the ſame land that Capt. *Bering* had made 97. Is viſited by ſome of the inhabitants *ib.* Arrives at the bay of *Awatſcha*, after encountering many difficulties and dangers 98
*Tſchukotſchia* river, account of 7
*Tſchuktſchi* iſthmus deſcribed —— *ib.*
*Tſchuktſchi*, a Pagan nation, account of, and expeditions againſt 24, 25. The ſame as the inhabitants of *Cumul* mentioned by *Venetus* 28
*Tſchuktſkoi Noſs*, account of 109. Its diſtance from the river *Anadir* ——— 27
*Tunguſi*, a Pagan nation, account of 54

U

*Urak* river, account of ——— 86

W

*Wagin*, *Mercurei*, his voyage in ſearch of the pretended iſland oppoſite the coaſt of *Kamtſchatka* 17. Murdered by his *Coſſacs* 18
*Walton*, Lieut. account of his voyage to *Japan* 73. Sends a boat on ſhore there *ib.* Returns to *Bolſchaireka* river 76
*Waxel*, Lieut. who ſucceeded Commodore *Bering* in the command, has the mortification to ſee his veſſel drove aſhore 98, Diſcovers that the land they were on was not the continent, but an iſland 99. Calls a council, in which it was agreed to build a ſmall veſſel out of the materials of the wreck, to carry them home 104. His contrivance to procure tar 105. Launches his new veſſel *ib.* Proceeds on his voyage, and arrives at the bay of *Awatſcha* 106.
*Werkuei Oſtrog* built —— 33
*Werſt*, a *Ruſſian* land meaſure —— 10
*Witzen*, his account of the ſhip *Breskes* to *Japan*, &c, ——— 111

FINIS.

55
50
45
60
C. Chidley
B. of Hopes Advance
Black Pt.
Cardinals Pt.
Very doubtful
Seal Pt. or
C. Bail
Pt. Sadd
Ganten
Bay
St. Peters
Haven
L A B R A D O R
O R

G680 M9 1764 C.2

B. 709555 nbsc